

# Tree Automata

Peter Lammich

March 17, 2025

## Abstract

This work presents a machine-checked tree automata library for Standard-ML, OCaml and Haskell. The algorithms are efficient by using appropriate data structures like RB-trees. The available algorithms for non-deterministic automata include membership query, reduction, intersection, union, and emptiness check with computation of a witness for non-emptiness.

The executable algorithms are derived from less-concrete, non-executable algorithms using data-refinement techniques. The concrete data structures are from the Isabelle Collections Framework.

Moreover, this work contains a formalization of the class of tree-regular languages and its closure properties under set operations.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1	Submission Structure . . . . .	4
1.1.1	common/ . . . . .	4
1.1.2	common/bugfixes/ . . . . .	5
1.1.3	./ . . . . .	5
1.1.4	code/ . . . . .	5
1.1.5	code/ml/ . . . . .	6
1.1.6	code/ocaml/ . . . . .	6
1.1.7	code/haskell/ . . . . .	6
1.1.8	code/taml/ . . . . .	7
<b>2</b>	<b>Trees</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Tree Automata</b>	<b>7</b>
3.1	Basic Definitions . . . . .	8
3.1.1	Tree Automata . . . . .	8
3.1.2	Acceptance . . . . .	8
3.1.3	Language . . . . .	9
3.2	Basic Properties . . . . .	9
3.3	Other Classes of Tree Automata . . . . .	11
3.3.1	Automata over Ranked Alphabets . . . . .	11
3.3.2	Deterministic Tree Automata . . . . .	13
3.3.3	Complete Tree Automata . . . . .	14
3.4	Algorithms . . . . .	14
3.4.1	Empty Automaton . . . . .	14
3.4.2	Remapping of States . . . . .	15
3.4.3	Union . . . . .	19
3.4.4	Reduction . . . . .	22
3.4.5	Product Automaton . . . . .	28
3.4.6	Determinization . . . . .	32
3.4.7	Completion . . . . .	36
3.4.8	Complement . . . . .	39
3.5	Regular Tree Languages . . . . .	40
3.5.1	Definitions . . . . .	40
3.5.2	Closure Properties . . . . .	42
<b>4</b>	<b>Abstract Tree Automata Algorithms</b>	<b>44</b>
4.1	Word Problem . . . . .	44
4.2	Backward Reduction and Emptiness Check . . . . .	46
4.2.1	Auxiliary Definitions . . . . .	46
4.2.2	Algorithms . . . . .	46
4.3	Product Automaton . . . . .	68

<b>5</b>	<b>Executable Implementation of Tree Automata</b>	<b>71</b>
5.1	Prelude . . . . .	71
5.1.1	Ad-Hoc instantiations of generic Algorithms . . . . .	72
5.2	Generating Indices of Rules . . . . .	72
5.3	Tree Automaton with Optional Indices . . . . .	73
5.4	Algorithm for the Word Problem . . . . .	78
5.5	Product Automaton and Intersection . . . . .	81
5.5.1	Brute Force Product Automaton . . . . .	81
5.5.2	Product Automaton with Forward-Reduction . . . . .	82
5.6	Remap States . . . . .	92
5.6.1	Reindex Automaton . . . . .	92
5.7	Union . . . . .	94
5.8	Operators to Construct Tree Automata . . . . .	95
5.9	Backwards Reduction and Emptiness Check . . . . .	97
5.9.1	Emptiness Check with Witness Computation . . . . .	104
5.10	Interface for Natural Number States and Symbols . . . . .	113
5.11	Interface Documentation . . . . .	115
5.11.1	Building a Tree Automaton . . . . .	115
5.11.2	Basic Operations . . . . .	116
5.12	Code Generation . . . . .	119
<b>6</b>	<b>Conclusion</b>	<b>120</b>
6.1	Efficiency of Generated Code . . . . .	120
6.2	Future Work . . . . .	121
6.3	Trusted Code Base . . . . .	122

# 1 Introduction

This work presents a tree automata library for Isabelle/HOL. Using the code-generator of Isabelle/HOL, efficient code for all supported target languages can be generated. Currently, code for Standard-ML, OCaml and Haskell is generated.

By using appropriate data structures from the Isabelle Collections Framework[4], the algorithms are rather efficient. For some (non-representative) test set (cf. Section 6.1), the Haskell-versions of the algorithms were only about 2-3 times slower than a Java-implementation, and several orders of magnitude faster than the TAML-library [3], that is implemented in OCaml. The standard-algorithms for non-deterministic tree-automata are available, i.e. membership query, reduction<sup>1</sup>, intersection, union, and emptiness check with computation of a witness for non-emptiness. The choice of the formalized algorithms was motivated by the requirements for a model-checker for DPNs[1], that the author is currently working on[5]. There, only intersection and emptiness check are needed, and a witness for non-emptiness is needed to derive an error-trace.

The algorithms are first formalized using the appropriate Isabelle data-types and specification mechanisms, mainly sets and inductive predicates. However, those algorithms are not efficiently executable. Hence, in a second step, those algorithms are systematically refined to use more efficient data structures from the Isabelle Collections Framework [4].

Apart from the executable algorithms, the library also contains a formalization of the class of ranked tree-regular languages and its standard closure properties. Closure under union, intersection, complement and difference is shown.

For an introduction to tree automata and the algorithms used here, see the TATA-book [2].

## 1.1 Submission Structure

In this section, we give a brief overview of the structure of this submission and a description of each file and directory.

### 1.1.1 common/

This directory contains a collection of generally useful theories.

**Misc.thy** Collection of various lemmas augmenting Isabelle's standard library.

---

<sup>1</sup>Currently only backward (utility) reduction is refined to executable code

### 1.1.2 `common/bugfixes/`

This directory contains bugfixes of the Isabelle standard libraries and tools. Currently, just one fix for the OCaml code-generator.

**Efficient\_Nat.thy** Replaces *Library/Efficient\_Nat.thy*. Fixes issue with OCaml code generation. Provided by Florian Haftmann.

### 1.1.3 `./`

This is the main directory of the submission, and contains the formalization of tree automata.

**AbsAlgo.thy** Algorithms on tree automata.

**Ta\_impl.thy** Executable implementation of tree automata.

**Ta.thy** Formalization of tree automata and basic properties.

**Tree.thy** Formalization of trees.

**document/** Contains files for latex document creation

**IsaMakefile** Isabelle makefile to check the proofs and build logic image and latex documents

**ROOT.ML** Setup for theories to be proofchecked and included into latex documents

**TODO** Todo list

### 1.1.4 `code/`

This directory contains the generated code as well as some test cases for performance measurement.

The test-cases consists of pairs of medium-sized tree automata (10-100 states, a few hundred rules). The performance test intersects the automata from each pair and checks the result for emptiness. If the result is not-empty, a tree accepted by both automata is constructed.

Currently, the tests are restricted to finding witnesses of non-emptiness for intersection, as this is the intended application of this library by the author.

**doTests.sh** Shell-script to compile all test-cases and start the performance measurement. When finished, the script outputs an overview of the time needed by all supported languages.

### 1.1.5 code/ml/

This directory contains the SML code.

**code/ml/generated/** Contains the file *Ta.ML*, created by Isabelle's code generator. This file declares a module *Ta* that contains all functions of the tree automata interface.

**doTests.sh** Shell script to execute SML performance test

**Main.ML** This file executes the ML performance tests.

**pt\_examples.ML** This file contains the input data for the performance test.

**run.sh** Used by doTests.sh

**test\_setup.ML** Required by *Main.ML*

### 1.1.6 code/ocaml/

This directory contains the OCaml code.

**code/ocaml/generated/** Contains the file *Ta.ml*, created by Isabelle's code generator. This file declares a module *Ta* that contains all functions of the tree automata interface.

**doTests.sh** Shell script to compile and execute OCaml performance test.

**Main.ml** Main file for compiled performance tests.

**Main\_script.ml** Main file for scripted performance tests.

**make.sh** Compile performance test files.

**Pt\_examples.ml** Contains the input data for the performance test.

**run\_script.sh** Run the performance test in script mode (slow).

**Test\_setup.ml** Required by *Main.ml* and *Main\_script.ml*.

### 1.1.7 code/haskell/

This directory contains the Haskell code.

**code/haskell/generated/** Contains the files generated by Isabelle's code generator. The *Ta.hs* declares the module *Ta* that contains the tree automata interface. There may be more files in this directory, that declare modules that are imported by *Ta*.

**doTests.sh** Compile and execute performance tests.

**Main.hs** Source-code of performance tests.

**make.sh** Compile performance tests.

**Pt\_examples.hs** Input data for performance tests.

### 1.1.8 code/taml/

This directory contains the Timbuk/Taml test cases.

**Main.ml** Runs the test-cases. To be executed within the Taml-toplevel.

**code/taml/tests/** This directory contains Taml input files for the test cases.

## 2 Trees

```
theory Tree  
imports Main  
begin
```

This theory defines trees as nodes with a label and a list of subtrees.

```
datatype 'l tree = NODE 'l 'l tree list
```

```
datatype-compat tree
```

```
end
```

## 3 Tree Automata

```
theory Ta  
imports Main Automatic-Refinement.Misc Tree  
begin
```

This theory defines tree automata, tree regular languages and specifies basic algorithms.

Nondeterministic and deterministic (bottom-up) tree automata are defined.

For non-deterministic tree automata, basic algorithms for membership, union, intersection, forward and backward reduction, and emptiness check are specified. Moreover, a (brute-force) determinization algorithm is specified.

For deterministic tree automata, we specify algorithms for complement and completion.

Finally, the class of regular languages over a given ranked alphabet is defined and its standard closure properties are proved.

The specification of the algorithms in this theory is very high-level, and the specifications are not executable. A bit more specific algorithms are defined in Section 4, and a refinement to executable definitions is done in Section 5.

### 3.1 Basic Definitions

#### 3.1.1 Tree Automata

A tree automata consists of a (finite) set of initial states and a (finite) set of rules.

A rule has the form  $q \rightarrow l q_1 \dots q_n$ , with the meaning that one can derive  $l(q_1 \dots q_n)$  from the state  $q$ .

**datatype** ('q,'l) *ta-rule* = *RULE* 'q 'l 'q list ( $\leftarrow \rightarrow - \rightarrow$ )

**record** ('Q,'L) *tree-automaton-rec* =  
*ta-initial* :: 'Q set  
*ta-rules* :: ('Q,'L) *ta-rule* set

— Rule deconstruction

**fun** *lhs* **where** *lhs* ( $q \rightarrow l qs$ ) =  $q$

**fun** *rhsq* **where** *rhsq* ( $q \rightarrow l qs$ ) =  $qs$

**fun** *rhsl* **where** *rhsl* ( $q \rightarrow l qs$ ) =  $l$

— States in a rule

**fun** *rule-states* **where** *rule-states* ( $q \rightarrow l qs$ ) = *insert*  $q$  (*set*  $qs$ )

— States in a set of rules

**definition**  *$\delta$ -states*  $\delta$  ==  $\bigcup$  (*rule-states* '  $\delta$ )

— States in a tree automaton

**definition** *ta-rstates*  $TA$  = *ta-initial*  $TA$   $\cup$   *$\delta$ -states* (*ta-rules*  $TA$ )

— Symbols occurring in rules

**definition**  *$\delta$ -symbols*  $\delta$  == *rhsl*' $\delta$

— Nondeterministic, finite tree automaton (NFTA)

**locale** *tree-automaton* =

**fixes**  $TA$  :: ('Q,'L) *tree-automaton-rec*

**assumes** *finite-rules*[*simp*, *intro!*]: *finite* (*ta-rules*  $TA$ )

**assumes** *finite-initial*[*simp*, *intro!*]: *finite* (*ta-initial*  $TA$ )

**begin**

**abbreviation**  $Qi$  == *ta-initial*  $TA$

**abbreviation**  $\delta$  == *ta-rules*  $TA$

**abbreviation**  $Q$  == *ta-rstates*  $TA$

**end**

#### 3.1.2 Acceptance

The predicate *accs*  $\delta$   $t$   $q$  is true, iff the tree  $t$  is accepted in state  $q$  w.r.t. the rules in  $\delta$ .

A tree is accepted in state  $q$ , if it can be produced from  $q$  using the rules.



**inductive** *accs* :: ('Q,'L) *ta-rule set*  $\Rightarrow$  'L *tree*  $\Rightarrow$  'Q  $\Rightarrow$  *bool*  
**where**

[[  
 ( $q \rightarrow f\ qs$ )  $\in \delta$ ; *length ts* = *length qs*;  
 !! $i. i < \text{length } qs \Rightarrow \text{accs } \delta (ts ! i) (qs ! i)$   
 ]]  $\Rightarrow \text{accs } \delta (\text{NODE } f\ ts)\ q$

— Characterization of *Ta.accs* using *list-all-zip*

**inductive** *accs-laz* :: ('Q,'L) *ta-rule set*  $\Rightarrow$  'L *tree*  $\Rightarrow$  'Q  $\Rightarrow$  *bool*  
**where**

[[  
 ( $q \rightarrow f\ qs$ )  $\in \delta$ ;  
*list-all-zip (accs-laz  $\delta$ ) ts qs*  
 ]]  $\Rightarrow \text{accs-laz } \delta (\text{NODE } f\ ts)\ q$

**lemma** *accs-laz*: *accs* = *accs-laz*

**apply** (*intro ext*)  
**apply** (*rule iffI*)  
**apply** (*erule accs.induct*)  
**apply** (*auto intro: accs-laz.intros[simplified list-all-zip-alt]*)  
**apply** (*erule accs-laz.induct*)  
**apply** (*auto intro: accs.intros simp add: list-all-zip-alt*)  
**done**

### 3.1.3 Language

The language of a tree automaton is the set of all trees that are accepted in an initial state.

**definition** *ta-lang TA* == {  $t . \exists q \in \text{ta-initial } TA. \text{accs } (\text{ta-rules } TA)\ t\ q$  }

## 3.2 Basic Properties

**lemma** *rule-states-simp*:

*rule-states x* = (*case x of* ( $q \rightarrow l\ qs$ )  $\Rightarrow$  *insert q (set qs)*)  
**by** (*case-tac x*) *auto*

**lemma** *rule-states-lhs[simp]*: *lhs r*  $\in$  *rule-states r*

**by** (*auto split: ta-rule.split simp add: rule-states-simp*)

**lemma** *rule-states-rhsq*: *set (rhsq r)*  $\subseteq$  *rule-states r*

**by** (*auto split: ta-rule.split simp add: rule-states-simp*)

**lemma** *rule-states-finite[simp, intro!]*: *finite (rule-states r)*

**by** (*simp add: rule-states-simp split: ta-rule.split*)

**lemma**  $\delta$ -*statesI*:

**assumes** *A*: ( $q \rightarrow l\ qs$ )  $\in \delta$   
**shows**  $q \in \delta$ -*states*  $\delta$

```

      set qs  $\subseteq$   $\delta$ -states  $\delta$ 
    using A
    apply (unfold  $\delta$ -states-def)
    by (auto split: ta-rule.split simp add: rule-states-simp)

lemma  $\delta$ -statesI':  $\llbracket (q \rightarrow l \text{ qs}) \in \delta; qi \in \text{set } qs \rrbracket \implies qi \in \delta$ -states  $\delta$ 
  using  $\delta$ -statesI(2) by fast

lemma  $\delta$ -states-accsI: accs  $\delta$  n q  $\implies q \in \delta$ -states  $\delta$ 
  by (auto elim: accs.cases intro:  $\delta$ -statesI)

lemma  $\delta$ -states-union[simp]:  $\delta$ -states ( $\delta \cup \delta'$ ) =  $\delta$ -states  $\delta \cup \delta$ -states  $\delta'$ 
  by (auto simp add:  $\delta$ -states-def)

lemma  $\delta$ -states-insert[simp]:
   $\delta$ -states (insert r  $\delta$ ) = (rule-states r  $\cup \delta$ -states  $\delta$ )
  by (unfold  $\delta$ -states-def) auto

lemma  $\delta$ -states-mono:  $\llbracket \delta \subseteq \delta' \rrbracket \implies \delta$ -states  $\delta \subseteq \delta$ -states  $\delta'$ 
  by (unfold  $\delta$ -states-def) auto

lemma  $\delta$ -states-finite[simp, intro]: finite  $\delta \implies$  finite ( $\delta$ -states  $\delta$ )
  by (unfold  $\delta$ -states-def) auto

lemma  $\delta$ -statesE:  $\llbracket q \in \delta$ -states  $\Delta$ ;
  !!f qs.  $\llbracket (q \rightarrow f \text{ qs}) \in \Delta \rrbracket \implies P$ ;
  !!ql f qs.  $\llbracket (ql \rightarrow f \text{ qs}) \in \Delta; q \in \text{set } qs \rrbracket \implies P$ 
   $\rrbracket \implies P$ 
  apply (unfold  $\delta$ -states-def)
  apply (auto)
  apply (auto simp add: rule-states-simp split: ta-rule.split-asm)
  done

lemma  $\delta$ -symbolsI:  $(q \rightarrow f \text{ qs}) \in \delta \implies f \in \delta$ -symbols  $\delta$ 
  by (force simp add:  $\delta$ -symbols-def)

lemma  $\delta$ -symbolsE:
  assumes A:  $f \in \delta$ -symbols  $\delta$ 
  obtains q qs where  $(q \rightarrow f \text{ qs}) \in \delta$ 
  using A
  apply (simp add:  $\delta$ -symbols-def)
  apply (erule imageE)
  apply (case-tac x)
  apply simp
  done

lemma  $\delta$ -symbols-simps[simp]:
   $\delta$ -symbols  $\{\}$  =  $\{\}$ 
   $\delta$ -symbols (insert r  $\delta$ ) = insert (rhsl r) ( $\delta$ -symbols  $\delta$ )

```

$\delta\text{-symbols } (\delta \cup \delta') = \delta\text{-symbols } \delta \cup \delta\text{-symbols } \delta'$   
**by** (*auto simp add:  $\delta\text{-symbols-def}$* )

**lemma**  $\delta\text{-symbols-finite}$ [*simp, intro!*]:  
 $\text{finite } \delta \implies \text{finite } (\delta\text{-symbols } \delta)$   
**by** (*auto simp add:  $\delta\text{-symbols-def}$* )

**lemma** *accs-mono*:  $\llbracket \text{accs } \delta \ n \ q; \delta \subseteq \delta' \rrbracket \implies \text{accs } \delta' \ n \ q$   
**proof** (*induct rule: accs.induct[case-names step]*)

**case** (*step*  $q \ l \ qs \ \delta \ n$ )  
**hence**  $R': (q \rightarrow l \ qs) \in \delta'$  **by** *auto*  
**from** *accs.intros*[*OF*  $R'$  *step.hyps*(2)]  
 $\text{step.hyps}(4)$ [*OF - step.premis*]  
**show** ?*case* .

**qed**

**context** *tree-automaton*

**begin**

**lemma** *initial-subset*:  $\text{ta-initial } TA \subseteq \text{ta-rstates } TA$   
**by** (*unfold ta-rstates-def auto*)

**lemma** *states-subset*:  $\delta\text{-states } (\text{ta-rules } TA) \subseteq \text{ta-rstates } TA$   
**by** (*unfold ta-rstates-def auto*)

**lemma** *finite-states*[*simp, intro!*]:  $\text{finite } (\text{ta-rstates } TA)$   
**by** (*auto simp add: ta-rstates-def  $\delta\text{-states-def}$*   
*intro: finite-rules finite-UN-I*)

**lemma** *finite-symbols*[*simp, intro!*]:  $\text{finite } (\delta\text{-symbols } (\text{ta-rules } TA))$   
**by** *simp*

**lemmas** *is-subset* = *rev-subsetD*[*OF - initial-subset*]  
 $\text{rev-subsetD}$ [*OF - states-subset*]

**end**

### 3.3 Other Classes of Tree Automata

#### 3.3.1 Automata over Ranked Alphabets

**inductive-set** *ranked-trees* ::  $('L \rightarrow \text{nat}) \Rightarrow 'L \text{ tree set}$   
**for**  $A$  **where**  
 $\llbracket \forall t \in \text{set } ts. t \in \text{ranked-trees } A; A \ f = \text{Some } (\text{length } ts) \rrbracket$   
 $\implies \text{NODE } f \ ts \in \text{ranked-trees } A$

**locale** *finite-alphabet* =  
**fixes**  $A :: ('L \rightarrow \text{nat})$   
**assumes**  $A\text{-finite}$ [*simp, intro!*]:  $\text{finite } (\text{dom } A)$   
**begin**  
**abbreviation**  $F == \text{dom } A$   
**end**

**context** *finite-alphabet*  
**begin**

**definition** *legal-rules*  $Q == \{ (q \rightarrow f \text{ } qs) \mid q f \text{ } qs.$   
 $q \in Q$   
 $\wedge qs \in \text{lists } Q$   
 $\wedge A f = \text{Some } (\text{length } qs)\}$

**lemma** *legal-rulesI*:

$\llbracket$   
 $r \in \delta;$   
 $\text{rule-states } r \subseteq Q;$   
 $A (\text{rhsl } r) = \text{Some } (\text{length } (\text{rhsq } r))$   
 $\rrbracket \implies r \in \text{legal-rules } Q$   
**apply** (*unfold legal-rules-def*)  
**apply** (*cases r*)  
**apply** (*auto*)  
**done**

**lemma** *legal-rules-finite*[*simp, intro!*]:

**fixes**  $Q :: 'Q \text{ set}$   
**assumes** [*simp, intro!*]: *finite*  $Q$   
**shows** *finite* (*legal-rules*  $Q$ )

**proof** –

**define** *possible-rules-f*  
**where** *possible-rules-f* =  $(\lambda(Q :: 'Q \text{ set}) f.$   
 $(\lambda(q,qs). (q \rightarrow f \text{ } qs)) \text{ ` } (Q \times (\text{lists } Q \cap \{qs. A f = \text{Some } (\text{length } qs)\}))$ )

**have** *legal-rules*  $Q = \bigcup (\text{possible-rules-f } Q \text{ ` } F)$   
**by** (*auto simp add: legal-rules-def possible-rules-f-def*)  
**moreover have**  $!!f. \text{finite } (\text{possible-rules-f } Q \text{ } f)$   
**apply** (*unfold possible-rules-f-def*)  
**apply** (*rule finite-imageI*)  
**apply** (*rule finite-SigmaI*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*case-tac A f*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*simp add: lists-of-len-fin*)  
**done**  
**ultimately show** *?thesis* **by** *auto*

**qed**  
**end**

– Finite tree automata with ranked alphabet

**locale** *ranked-tree-automaton* =  
*tree-automaton*  $TA +$   
*finite-alphabet*  $A$   
**for**  $TA :: ('Q, 'L) \text{ tree-automaton-rec}$   
**and**  $A :: 'L \rightarrow \text{nat} +$

**assumes** *ranked*:  $(q \rightarrow f qs) \in \delta \implies A f = \text{Some } (\text{length } qs)$   
**begin**

**lemma** *rules-legal*:  $r \in \delta \implies r \in \text{legal-rules } Q$   
**apply** (*rule legal-rulesI*)  
**apply** *assumption*  
**apply** (*auto simp add: ta-rstates-def  $\delta$ -states-def*) [1]  
**apply** (*case-tac r*)  
**apply** (*auto intro: ranked*)  
**done**

— Only well-ranked trees are accepted

**lemma** *accs-is-ranked*:  $\text{accs } \delta t q \implies t \in \text{ranked-trees } A$   
**apply** (*induct  $\delta \equiv \delta t q$  rule: accs.induct*)  
**apply** (*rule ranked-trees.intros*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: set-conv-nth ranked*)  
**done**

— The language consists of well-ranked trees

**theorem** *lang-is-ranked*:  $\text{ta-lang } TA \subseteq \text{ranked-trees } A$   
**using** *accs-is-ranked* **by** (*auto simp add: ta-lang-def*)

**end**

### 3.3.2 Deterministic Tree Automata

**locale** *det-tree-automaton* = *ranked-tree-automaton*  $TA A$

**for**  $TA :: ('Q, 'L) \text{tree-automaton-rec}$  **and**  $A +$

**assumes** *deterministic*:  $\llbracket (q \rightarrow f qs) \in \delta; (q' \rightarrow f qs) \in \delta \rrbracket \implies q = q'$

**begin**

**theorem** *accs-unique*:  $\llbracket \text{accs } \delta t q; \text{accs } \delta t q' \rrbracket \implies q = q'$

**unfolding** *accs-laz*

**proof** (*induct  $\delta \equiv \delta t q$  arbitrary:  $q'$  rule: accs-laz.induct[case-names step]*)

**case** (*step  $q f qs ts q'$* )

**hence**  $I$ :

$(q \rightarrow f qs) \in \delta$

*list-all-zip* (*accs-laz  $\delta$* )  $ts qs$

*list-all-zip* ( $\lambda t q. (\forall q'. \text{accs-laz } \delta t q' \longrightarrow q = q')$ )  $ts qs$

*accs-laz  $\delta$*  (*NODE  $f ts$* )  $q'$

**by** *auto*

**from**  $I(4)$  **obtain**  $qs'$  **where**  $A'$ :

$(q' \rightarrow f qs') \in \delta$

*list-all-zip* (*accs-laz  $\delta$* )  $ts qs'$

**by** (*auto elim!: accs-laz.cases*)

**from**  $I(2,3)$   $A'(2)$  **have** *list-all-zip* (=)  $qs qs'$

**by** (*auto simp add: list-all-zip-alt*)

**hence**  $qs = qs'$  **by** (*auto simp add: laz-eq*)

**with** *deterministic*[*OF  $I(1)$ , of  $q'$* ]  $A'(1)$  **show**  $q = q'$  **by** *simp*

qed

end

### 3.3.3 Complete Tree Automata

```
locale complete-tree-automaton = det-tree-automaton TA A
  for TA :: ('Q,'L) tree-automaton-rec and A
  +
  assumes complete:
     $\llbracket qs \in \text{lists } Q; A f = \text{Some } (\text{length } qs) \rrbracket \implies \exists q. (q \rightarrow f qs) \in \delta$ 
begin
```

— In a complete DFTA, all trees can be labeled by some state

**theorem** *label-all*:  $t \in \text{ranked-trees } A \implies \exists q \in Q. \text{accs } \delta t q$

**proof** (*induct rule*:  $\text{ranked-trees.induct}[\text{case-names } \text{constr}]$ )

**case** (*constr ts f*)

**obtain** *qs* **where** *QS*:

*qs*  $\in \text{lists } Q$

*list-all-zip* (*accs*  $\delta$ ) *ts qs*

**and** [*simp*]:  $\text{length } qs = \text{length } ts$

**proof** —

**from** *constr*(1) **have**  $\forall i < \text{length } ts. \exists q. q \in Q \wedge \text{accs } \delta (ts!i) q$

**by** (*auto*)

**thus** *?thesis*

**apply** (*erule-tac obtain-list-from-elements*)

**apply** (*rule-tac that*)

**apply** (*auto simp add: list-all-zip-alt set-conv-nth*)

**done**

qed

**moreover from** *complete*[*OF QS*(1), *simplified*, *OF constr*(2)] **obtain** *q*

**where**  $(q \rightarrow f qs) \in \delta ..$

**ultimately show** *?case*

**by** (*auto simp add: accs-laz ta-rstates-def*

*intro: accs-laz.intros*  $\delta$ -*statesI*)

qed

end

## 3.4 Algorithms

In this section, basic algorithms on tree-automata are specified. The specification is a high-level, non-executable specification, intended to be refined to more low-level specifications, as done in Sections 4 and 5.

### 3.4.1 Empty Automaton

**definition** *ta-empty* == ( $\langle \text{ta-initial} = \{\}, \text{ta-rules} = \{\} \rangle$ )

**theorem** *ta-empty-lang*[simp]: *ta-lang ta-empty* = {}  
**by** (*auto simp add: ta-empty-def ta-lang-def*)

**theorem** *ta-empty-ta*[simp, intro!]: *tree-automaton ta-empty*  
**apply** (*unfold-locales*)  
**apply** (*unfold ta-empty-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**theorem** (**in** *finite-alphabet*) *ta-empty-rta*[simp, intro!]:  
*ranked-tree-automaton ta-empty A*  
**apply** (*unfold-locales*)  
**apply** (*unfold ta-empty-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**theorem** (**in** *finite-alphabet*) *ta-empty-dta*[simp, intro!]:  
*det-tree-automaton ta-empty A*  
**apply** (*unfold-locales*)  
**apply** (*unfold ta-empty-def*)  
**apply** (*auto*)  
**done**

### 3.4.2 Remapping of States

**fun** *remap-rule* **where** *remap-rule f* (*q* → *l qs*) = ((*f q*) → *l (map f qs)*)

**definition**

*ta-remap f TA* == (| *ta-initial* = *f ' ta-initial TA*,  
*ta-rules* = *remap-rule f ' ta-rules TA*  
|)

**lemma** *δ-states-remap*[simp]: *δ-states (remap-rule f ' δ)* = *f ' δ-states δ*  
**apply** (*auto simp add: δ-states-def*)  
**apply** (*case-tac a*)  
**apply** *force*  
**apply** (*case-tac xb*)  
**apply** *force*  
**done**

**lemma** *remap-accs1*: *accs δ n q* ⇒ *accs (remap-rule f ' δ) n (f q)*

**proof** (*induct rule: accs.induct[case-names step]*)

**case** (*step q l qs δ ts*)

**from** *step.hyps(1)* **have** *1*: ((*f q*) → *l (map f qs)*) ∈ *remap-rule f ' δ*

**by** (*drule-tac f=remap-rule f in imageI*) *simp*

**show** ?*case* **proof** (*rule accs.intros[OF 1]*)

**fix** *i* **assume** *i < length (map f qs)*

**with** *step.hyps(4)* **show** *accs (remap-rule f ' δ) (ts ! i) (map f qs ! i)*

**by** *auto*

**qed** (*auto simp add: step.hyps(2)*)

qed

**lemma** *remap-lang1*:  $t \in \text{ta-lang } TA \implies t \in \text{ta-lang } (\text{ta-remap } f \text{ } TA)$   
by (*unfold ta-lang-def ta-remap-def*) (*auto dest: remap-accs1*)

**lemma** *remap-accs2*:  $\llbracket$

*accs*  $\delta' n q'$ ;  
 $\delta' = (\text{remap-rule } f \text{ } \delta)$ ;  
 $q' = f \text{ } q$ ;  
*inj-on*  $f \text{ } Q$ ;  
 $q \in Q$ ;  
 $\delta\text{-states } \delta \subseteq Q$

$\rrbracket \implies \text{accs } \delta n q$

**proof** (*induct arbitrary:  $\delta q$  rule: accs.induct[case-names step]*)

**case** (*step*  $q' l \text{ } qs \delta' \text{ } ts \delta q$ )

**note** [*simp*] = *step.prem*s(1,2)

**from** *step.hyps*(1)[*simplified*] *step.prem*s(3,4,5) **have**

*R*:  $(q \rightarrow l \text{ } (\text{map } (\text{inv-on } f \text{ } Q) \text{ } qs)) \in \delta$

**apply** (*erule-tac imageE*)

**apply** (*case-tac x*)

**apply** (*auto simp del:map-map*)

**apply** (*subst inj-on-map-inv-f*)

**apply** (*auto dest:  $\delta\text{-statesI}$* ) [2]

**apply** (*subgoal-tac q  $\in \delta\text{-states } \delta$* )

**apply** (*unfold inj-on-def*) [1]

**apply** (*metis  $\delta\text{-statesI}(1)$  contra-subsetD*)

**apply** (*fastforce intro:  $\delta\text{-statesI}(1)$  dest: inj-onD*)

**done**

**show** ?*case* **proof** (*rule accs.intros[OF R]*)

**fix** *i*

**assume**  $i < \text{length } (\text{map } (\text{inv-on } f \text{ } Q) \text{ } qs)$

**hence**  $L: i < \text{length } qs$  **by** *simp*

**from** *step.hyps*(1)[*simplified*] *step.prem*s(5) **have**

*IR*:  $\forall i. i < \text{length } qs \implies qs[i] \in f \text{ } Q$

**apply** *auto*

**apply** (*case-tac x*)

**apply** (*auto*)

**apply** (*rename-tac list*)

**apply** (*subgoal-tac list!i  $\in \delta\text{-states } \delta$* )

**apply** *blast*

**apply** (*auto dest!:  $\delta\text{-statesI}(2)$* )

**done**

**show** *accs*  $\delta (ts ! i) (\text{map } (\text{inv-on } f \text{ } Q) \text{ } qs ! i)$

**apply** (*rule step.hyps(4)[OF L, simplified]*)

**apply** (*simp-all add: f-inv-on-f[OF IR[OF L]]*)

*inv-on-f-range*[*OF IR[OF L]*]

*L step.prem*s(3,5))



**done**  
**qed** (*auto simp add: step.hyps(2)*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (*in tree-automaton*) *remap-lang2*:  
**assumes** *I: inj-on f (ta-rstates TA)*  
**shows**  $t \in \text{ta-lang } (ta\text{-remap } f \text{ TA}) \implies t \in \text{ta-lang } TA$   
**apply** (*unfold ta-lang-def ta-remap-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule-tac x=x in bexI*)  
**apply** (*drule remap-accs2[OF - - - I]*)  
**apply** (*auto dest: is-subset*)  
**done**

**theorem** (*in tree-automaton*) *remap-lang*:  
 $\text{inj-on } f \text{ (ta-rstates TA)} \implies \text{ta-lang } (ta\text{-remap } f \text{ TA}) = \text{ta-lang } TA$   
**by** (*auto intro: remap-lang1 remap-lang2*)

**lemma** (*in tree-automaton*) *remap-ta[intro!, simp]*:  
*tree-automaton (ta-remap f TA)*  
**using** *initial-subset states-subset finite-states finite-rules*  
**by** (*unfold-locales (auto simp add: ta-remap-def ta-rstates-def)*)

**lemma** (*in ranked-tree-automaton*) *remap-rta[intro!, simp]*:  
*ranked-tree-automaton (ta-remap f TA) A*

**proof** –  
**interpret** *ta: tree-automaton (ta-remap f TA)* **by** *simp*  
**show** *?thesis*  
**apply** (*unfold-locales*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: ta-remap-def*)  
**apply** (*case-tac x*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: ta-remap-def intro: ranked*)  
**done**

**qed**

**lemma** (*in det-tree-automaton*) *remap-dta[intro, simp]*:

**assumes** *INJ: inj-on f Q*  
**shows** *det-tree-automaton (ta-remap f TA) A*  
**proof** –  
**interpret** *ta: ranked-tree-automaton (ta-remap f TA) A* **by** *simp*  
**show** *?thesis*  
**proof**  
**fix** *q q' l qs*  
**assume** *A:*  
 $(q \rightarrow l \text{ qs}) \in \text{ta-rules } (ta\text{-remap } f \text{ TA})$   
 $(q' \rightarrow l \text{ qs}) \in \text{ta-rules } (ta\text{-remap } f \text{ TA})$   
**then obtain** *qo qo' qso qso'* **where** *RO:*  
 $(qo \rightarrow l \text{ qso}) \in \delta$   
 $(qo' \rightarrow l \text{ qso}') \in \delta$

```

and [simp]:
  q = f qo
  q' = f qo'
  qs = map f qso
  map f qso = map f qso'
  apply (auto simp add: ta-remap-def)
  apply (case-tac x, case-tac xa)
  apply auto
  done
from RO have OQ: qo ∈ Q   qo' ∈ Q   set qso ⊆ Q   set qso' ⊆ Q
  by (unfold ta-rstates-def)
      (auto dest: δ-statesI)

from OQ(3,4) have INJQSO: inj-on f (set qso ∪ set qso')
  by (auto intro: subset-inj-on[OF INJ])

from inj-on-map-eq-map[OF INJQSO] have qso = qso' by simp
with deterministic[OF RO(1)] RO(2) have qo = qo' by simp
thus q = q' by simp
qed
qed

lemma (in complete-tree-automaton) remap-cta[intro, simp]:
  assumes INJ: inj-on f Q
  shows complete-tree-automaton (ta-remap f TA) A
proof –
  interpret ta: det-tree-automaton (ta-remap f TA) A by (simp add: INJ)
  show ?thesis
  proof
    fix qs l
    assume A:
      qs ∈ lists (ta-rstates (ta-remap f TA))
      A l = Some (length qs)
    from A(1) have qs ∈ lists (f'Q)
      by (auto simp add: ta-rstates-def ta-remap-def)
    then obtain qso where QSO:
      qso ∈ lists Q
      qs = map f qso
      by (blast elim!: lists-image-witness)
    hence [simp]: length qso = length qs by simp

    from complete[OF QSO(1)] A(2) obtain qo where (qo → l qso) ∈ δ
      by auto

    with QSO(2) have ((f qo) → l qs) ∈ ta-rules (ta-remap f TA)
      by (force simp add: ta-remap-def)
    thus ∃ q. q → l qs ∈ ta-rules (ta-remap f TA) ..
  qed

```

qed

### 3.4.3 Union

**definition** *ta-union*  $TA TA' ==$   
 ( $ta-initial = ta-initial TA \cup ta-initial TA'$ ,  
  $ta-rules = ta-rules TA \cup ta-rules TA'$   
 )

— Given two disjoint sets of states, where no rule contains states from both sets, then any accepted tree is also accepted when only using one of the subsets of states and rules. This lemma and its corollaries capture the basic idea of the union-algorithm.

**lemma** *accs-exclusive-aux*:

$\llbracket accs \ \delta n \ n \ q; \ \delta n = \delta \cup \delta'; \ \delta\text{-states } \delta \cap \delta\text{-states } \delta' = \{\}; \ q \in \delta\text{-states } \delta \rrbracket$   
  $\implies accs \ \delta \ n \ q$

**proof** (*induct arbitrary*:  $\delta \ \delta'$  *rule*:  $accs.induct[case-names step]$ )

**case** ( $step \ q \ l \ qs \ \delta n \ ts \ \delta \ \delta'$ )

**note** [ $simp$ ] =  $step.prem(1)$

**note** [ $simp$ ] =  $step.hyps(2)[symmetric]$   $step.hyps(3)$

**from**  $step.prem$  **have**  $q \notin \delta\text{-states } \delta'$  **by** *blast*

**with**  $step.hyps(1)$  **have**  $set \ qs \subseteq \delta\text{-states } \delta$  **and**  $R: (q \rightarrow l \ qs) \in \delta$

**by** (*auto dest*:  $\delta\text{-states}I$ )

**hence**  $!!i. i < length \ qs \implies accs \ \delta \ (ts \ ! \ i) \ (qs \ ! \ i)$

**by** (*force intro*:  $step.hyps(4)[OF - step.prem(1,2)]$ )

**with**  $accs.intros[OF R step.hyps(2)]$  **show**  $?case$  .

qed

**corollary** *accs-exclusive1*:

$\llbracket accs \ (\delta \cup \delta') \ n \ q; \ \delta\text{-states } \delta \cap \delta\text{-states } \delta' = \{\}; \ q \in \delta\text{-states } \delta \rrbracket$   
  $\implies accs \ \delta \ n \ q$

**using** *accs-exclusive-aux*[ $of - n \ q \ \delta \ \delta'$ ] **by** *blast*

**corollary** *accs-exclusive2*:

$\llbracket accs \ (\delta \cup \delta') \ n \ q; \ \delta\text{-states } \delta \cap \delta\text{-states } \delta' = \{\}; \ q \in \delta\text{-states } \delta' \rrbracket$   
  $\implies accs \ \delta' \ n \ q$

**using** *accs-exclusive-aux*[ $of - n \ q \ \delta' \ \delta$ ] **by** *blast*

**lemma** *ta-union-correct-aux1*:

**fixes**  $TA TA'$

**assumes**  $TA$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA$

**assumes**  $TA'$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA'$

**assumes**  $DJ$ :  $ta\text{-rstates } TA \cap ta\text{-rstates } TA' = \{\}$

**shows**  $ta\text{-lang } (ta\text{-union } TA \ TA') = ta\text{-lang } TA \cup ta\text{-lang } TA'$

**proof** (*safe*)

**interpret**  $ta$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA$  **using**  $TA$  .

**interpret**  $ta'$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA'$  **using**  $TA'$  .

**from**  $DJ$   $ta$ .*states-subset*  $ta'$ .*states-subset* **have**

```

    DJ':  $\delta$ -states (ta-rules TA)  $\cap$   $\delta$ -states (ta-rules TA') = {}
  by blast

fix n
assume A: n  $\in$  ta-lang (ta-union TA TA')   n  $\notin$  ta-lang TA'
from A(1) obtain q where
  B: q  $\in$  ta-initial TA  $\cup$  ta-initial TA'
  accs (ta-rules TA  $\cup$  ta-rules TA') n q
  by (auto simp add: ta-lang-def ta-union-def)
from  $\delta$ -states-accsI[OF B(2), simplified] show n  $\in$  ta-lang TA proof
  assume C: q  $\in$   $\delta$ -states (ta-rules TA)
  with accs-exclusive1[OF B(2) DJ'] have accs (ta-rules TA) n q .
  moreover from DJ C ta'.initial-subset ta.states-subset B(1) have
    q  $\in$  ta-initial TA
  by auto
  ultimately show ?thesis by (unfold ta-lang-def) auto
next
  assume C: q  $\in$   $\delta$ -states (ta-rules TA')
  with accs-exclusive2[OF B(2) DJ'] have accs (ta-rules TA') n q .
  moreover from DJ C ta.initial-subset B(1) ta'.states-subset have
    q  $\in$  ta-initial TA'
  by auto
  ultimately have False using A(2) by (unfold ta-lang-def) auto
  thus ?thesis ..
qed
qed (unfold ta-lang-def ta-union-def, auto intro: accs-mono)

lemma ta-union-correct-aux2:
  fixes TA TA'
  assumes TA: tree-automaton TA
  assumes TA': tree-automaton TA'
  shows tree-automaton (ta-union TA TA')
proof –
  interpret ta: tree-automaton TA using TA .
  interpret ta': tree-automaton TA' using TA' .

  show ?thesis
    apply (unfold-locales)
    apply (unfold ta-union-def)
    apply auto
  done
qed

```

— If the sets of states are disjoint, the language of the union-automaton is the union of the languages of the original automata.

```

theorem ta-union-correct:
  fixes TA TA'
  assumes TA: tree-automaton TA
  assumes TA': tree-automaton TA'

```

```

assumes DJ: ta-rstates TA  $\cap$  ta-rstates TA' = {}
shows ta-lang (ta-union TA TA') = ta-lang TA  $\cup$  ta-lang TA'
      tree-automaton (ta-union TA TA')
using ta-union-correct-aux1[OF TA TA' DJ]
      ta-union-correct-aux2[OF TA TA']
by auto

```

**lemma** ta-union-rta:

```

fixes TA TA'
assumes TA: ranked-tree-automaton TA A
assumes TA': ranked-tree-automaton TA' A
shows ranked-tree-automaton (ta-union TA TA') A
proof –
  interpret ta: ranked-tree-automaton TA A using TA .
  interpret ta': ranked-tree-automaton TA' A using TA' .

```

```

show ?thesis
  apply (unfold-locales)
  apply (unfold ta-union-def)
  apply (auto intro: ta.ranked ta'.ranked)
done

```

**qed**

The union-algorithm may wrap the states of the first and second automaton in order to make them disjoint

```

datatype ('q1,'q2) ustate-wrapper = USW1 'q1 | USW2 'q2

```

**lemma** usw-disjoint[simp]:

```

  USW1 ' X  $\cap$  USW2 ' Y = {}
  remap-rule USW1 ' X  $\cap$  remap-rule USW2 ' Y = {}
apply auto
apply (case-tac xa, case-tac xb)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** states-usw-disjoint[simp]:

```

  ta-rstates (ta-remap USW1 X)  $\cap$  ta-rstates (ta-remap USW2 Y) = {}
by (auto simp add: ta-remap-def ta-rstates-def)

```

**lemma** usw-inj-on[simp, intro!]:

```

  inj-on USW1 X
  inj-on USW2 X
by (auto intro: inj-onI)

```

**definition** ta-union-wrap TA TA' =

```

  ta-union (ta-remap USW1 TA) (ta-remap USW2 TA')

```

**lemma** ta-union-wrap-correct:

```

fixes TA :: ('Q1,'L) tree-automaton-rec

```

**fixes**  $TA' :: ('Q2, 'L)$  *tree-automaton-rec*  
**assumes**  $TA$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA$   
**assumes**  $TA'$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA'$   
**shows**  $ta-lang (ta-union-wrap TA TA') = ta-lang TA \cup ta-lang TA'$  (**is** ?T1)  
 $tree-automaton (ta-union-wrap TA TA')$  (**is** ?T2)  
**proof** –  
**interpret**  $a1$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA$  **by** *fact*  
**interpret**  $a2$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA'$  **by** *fact*  
  
**show** ?T1 ?T2  
**by** (*unfold ta-union-wrap-def*)  
(*simp-all add: ta-union-correct a1.remap-lang a2.remap-lang*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *ta-union-wrap-rta*:  
**fixes**  $TA TA'$   
**assumes**  $TA$ : *ranked-tree-automaton*  $TA A$   
**assumes**  $TA'$ : *ranked-tree-automaton*  $TA' A$   
**shows** *ranked-tree-automaton*  $(ta-union-wrap TA TA') A$   
**proof** –  
**interpret**  $ta$ : *ranked-tree-automaton*  $TA A$  **using**  $TA$  .  
**interpret**  $ta'$ : *ranked-tree-automaton*  $TA' A$  **using**  $TA'$  .  
  
**show** ?thesis  
**by** (*unfold ta-union-wrap-def*)  
(*simp add: ta-union-rta*)

**qed**

### 3.4.4 Reduction

**definition** *reduce-rules*  $\delta P == \delta \cap \{ r. rule-states r \subseteq P \}$

**lemma** *reduce-rulesI*:  $\llbracket r \in \delta; rule-states r \subseteq P \rrbracket \implies r \in reduce-rules \delta P$   
**by** (*unfold reduce-rules-def*) *auto*

**lemma** *reduce-rulesD*:  
 $\llbracket r \in reduce-rules \delta P \rrbracket \implies r \in \delta$   
 $\llbracket r \in reduce-rules \delta P; q \in rule-states r \rrbracket \implies q \in P$   
**by** (*unfold reduce-rules-def*) *auto*

**lemma** *reduce-rules-subset*:  $reduce-rules \delta P \subseteq \delta$   
**by** (*unfold reduce-rules-def*) *auto*

**lemma** *reduce-rules-mono*:  $P \subseteq P' \implies reduce-rules \delta P \subseteq reduce-rules \delta P'$   
**by** (*unfold reduce-rules-def*) *auto*

**lemma**  *$\delta$ -states-reduce-subset*:  
**shows**  $\delta-states (reduce-rules \delta Q) \subseteq \delta-states \delta \cap Q$

by (unfold  $\delta$ -states-def reduce-rules-def)  
 auto

**lemmas**  $\delta$ -states-reduce-subsetI = rev-subsetD[OF  $\delta$ -states-reduce-subset]

**definition** ta-reduce

:: ('Q,'L) tree-automaton-rec  $\Rightarrow$  ('Q set)  $\Rightarrow$  ('Q,'L) tree-automaton-rec  
**where** ta-reduce TA P ==  
 ( $\lambda$  ta-initial = ta-initial TA  $\cap$  P,  
 ta-rules = reduce-rules (ta-rules TA) P )

— Reducing a tree automaton preserves the tree automata invariants

**theorem** ta-reduce-inv: **assumes** A: tree-automaton TA

**shows** tree-automaton (ta-reduce TA P)

**proof** –

**interpret** tree-automaton TA **using** A .

**show** ?thesis **proof**

**show** finite (ta-rules (ta-reduce TA P))

finite (ta-initial (ta-reduce TA P))

**using** finite-states finite-rules finite-subset[OF reduce-rules-subset]

**by** (unfold ta-reduce-def) (auto simp add: Let-def)

qed

qed

**lemma** reduce- $\delta$ -states-rules[simp]:

(ta-rules (ta-reduce TA ( $\delta$ -states (ta-rules TA)))) = ta-rules TA

**by** (auto simp add: ta-reduce-def  $\delta$ -states-def reduce-rules-def)

— Reducing a tree automaton to the states that occur in its rules does not change its language

**lemma** ta-reduce- $\delta$ -states:

ta-lang (ta-reduce TA ( $\delta$ -states (ta-rules TA))) = ta-lang TA

**apply** (auto simp add: ta-lang-def)

**apply** (frule  $\delta$ -states-accsI)

**apply** (auto simp add: ta-reduce-def  $\delta$ -states-def reduce-rules-def) [1]

**apply** (frule  $\delta$ -states-accsI)

**apply** (auto simp add: ta-reduce-def  $\delta$ -states-def reduce-rules-def) [1]

done

**Forward Reduction** We characterize the set of forward accessible states by the reflexive, transitive closure of a forward-successor ( $f$ -succ  $\subseteq Q \times Q$ ) relation applied to the initial states.

The forward-successors of a state  $q$  are those states  $q'$  such that there is a rule  $q \leftarrow f(\dots q' \dots)$ .

**inductive-set**  $f$ -succ **for**  $\delta$  **where**

$\llbracket (q \rightarrow l \text{ qs}) \in \delta; q' \in \text{set qs} \rrbracket \Longrightarrow (q, q') \in f\text{-succ } \delta$

— Alternative characterization of forward successors

**lemma** *f-succ-alt*:  $f\text{-succ } \delta = \{(q, q'). \exists l qs. (q \rightarrow l qs) \in \delta \wedge q' \in \text{set } qs\}$   
**by** (*auto intro: f-succ.intros elim!: f-succ.cases*)

— Forward accessible states

**definition** *f-accessible*  $\delta Q0 == ((f\text{-succ } \delta)^*) \text{ `` } Q0$

— Alternative characterization of forward accessible states. The initial states are forward accessible, and if there is a rule whose lhs-state is forward-accessible, all rhs-states of that rule are forward-accessible, too.

**inductive-set** *f-accessible-alt* ::  $('Q, 'L) \text{ ta-rule set} \Rightarrow 'Q \text{ set} \Rightarrow 'Q \text{ set}$   
**for**  $\delta Q0$   
**where**  
*fa-refl*:  $q0 \in Q0 \Longrightarrow q0 \in f\text{-accessible-alt } \delta Q0 \mid$   
*fa-step*:  $\llbracket q \in f\text{-accessible-alt } \delta Q0; (q \rightarrow l qs) \in \delta; q' \in \text{set } qs \rrbracket$   
 $\Longrightarrow q' \in f\text{-accessible-alt } \delta Q0$

**lemma** *f-accessible-alt*:  $f\text{-accessible } \delta Q0 = f\text{-accessible-alt } \delta Q0$   
**apply** (*unfold f-accessible-def f-succ-alt*)  
**apply** *auto*

**proof** *goal-cases*  
**case 1 thus** ?*case*  
**apply** (*induct rule: rtrancl-induct*)  
**apply** (*auto intro: f-accessible-alt.intros*)  
**done**

**next**  
**case 2 thus** ?*case*  
**apply** (*induct rule: f-accessible-alt.induct*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: Image-def intro: rtrancl.intros*)  
**done**

**qed**

**lemmas** *f-accessibleI* = *f-accessible-alt.intros*[*folded f-accessible-alt*]  
**lemmas** *f-accessibleE* = *f-accessible-alt.cases*[*folded f-accessible-alt*]

**lemma** *f-succ-finite*[*simp, intro*]:  $\text{finite } \delta \Longrightarrow \text{finite } (f\text{-succ } \delta)$   
**apply** (*unfold f-succ-alt*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac B = \delta\text{-states } \delta \times \delta\text{-states } \delta \text{ in finite-subset}*)  
**apply** (*auto dest: \delta\text{-statesI simp add: \delta\text{-states-finite}*)  
**done**

**lemma** *f-accessible-mono*:  $Q \subseteq Q' \Longrightarrow x \in f\text{-accessible } \delta Q \Longrightarrow x \in f\text{-accessible } \delta Q'$   
**by** (*auto simp add: f-accessible-def*)

**lemma** *f-accessible-prepend*:  
 $\llbracket (q \rightarrow l qs) \in \delta; q' \in \text{set } qs; x \in f\text{-accessible } \delta \{q'\} \rrbracket$   
 $\Longrightarrow x \in f\text{-accessible } \delta \{q\}$   
**by** (*auto dest: f-succ.intros simp add: f-accessible-def*)



**lemma** *f-accessible-subset*:  $q \in f\text{-accessible } \delta \ Q \implies q \in Q \cup \delta\text{-states } \delta$   
**apply** (*unfold f-accessible-alt*)  
**apply** (*induct rule: f-accessible-alt.induct*)  
**apply** (*force simp add: \delta-states-def split: ta-rule.split-asm*) +  
**done**

**lemma** (*in tree-automaton*) *f-accessible-in-states*:  
 $q \in f\text{-accessible } (ta\text{-rules } TA) (ta\text{-initial } TA) \implies q \in ta\text{-rstates } TA$   
**using** *initial-subset states-subset*  
**by** (*drule-tac f-accessible-subset*) (*auto*)

**lemma** *f-accessible-refl-inter-simp*[*simp*]:  $Q \cap f\text{-accessible } r \ Q = Q$   
**by** (*unfold f-accessible-alt*) (*auto intro: fa-refl*)

— A tree remains accepted by a state  $q$  if the rules are reduced to the states that are forward-accessible from  $q$

**lemma** *accs-reduce-f-acc*:  
 $accs \ \delta \ t \ q \implies accs \ (reduce\text{-rules } \delta \ (f\text{-accessible } \delta \ \{q\})) \ t \ q$   
**proof** (*induct rule: accs.induct[case-names step]*)  
**case** (*step q l qs \delta n*)  
**show** *?case proof* (*rule accs.intros[of q l qs]*)  
**show**  $(q \rightarrow l \ qs) \in reduce\text{-rules } \delta \ (f\text{-accessible } \delta \ \{q\})$   
**using** *step(1)*  
**by** (*fastforce*  
*intro!: reduce-rulesI*  
*intro: f-succ.intros*  
*simp add: f-accessible-def*)  
**next**  
**fix**  $i$   
**assume**  $A: i < length \ qs$   
  
**have**  $B: f\text{-accessible } \delta \ \{q\} \supseteq f\text{-accessible } \delta \ \{qs!i\}$  **using** *step.hyps(1)*  
**by** (*force*  
*simp add: A f-accessible-def*  
*intro: converse-rtrancl-into-rtrancl f-succ.intros[where q' = qs!i]*)  
**show**  $accs \ (reduce\text{-rules } \delta \ (f\text{-accessible } \delta \ \{q\})) \ (n \ ! \ i) \ (qs \ ! \ i)$   
**using** *accs-mono[OF step.hyps(4)][OF A] reduce-rules-mono[OF B]* .  
**qed** (*simp-all add: step.hyps(2,3)*)  
**qed**

— Short-hand notation for forward-reducing a tree-automaton

**abbreviation** *ta-fwd-reduce*  $TA ==$   
 $(ta\text{-reduce } TA \ (f\text{-accessible } (ta\text{-rules } TA) (ta\text{-initial } TA)))$

— Forward-reducing a tree automaton does not change its language

**theorem** *ta-reduce-f-acc*[*simp*]:  $ta\text{-lang } (ta\text{-fwd-reduce } TA) = ta\text{-lang } TA$   
**apply** (*rule sym*)  
**apply** (*unfold ta-reduce-def ta-lang-def*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: Let-def*)

```

apply (rule-tac x=q in bexI)
apply (drule accs-reduce-f-acc)
apply (rule-tac
  PI=(f-accessible (ta-rules TA) {q})
  in accs-mono[OF - reduce-rules-mono])
apply (auto simp add: f-accessible-def)
apply (rule-tac x=q in bexI)
apply (blast intro: accs-mono[OF - reduce-rules-subset])
.

```

**Backward Reduction** A state is backward accessible, iff at least one tree is accepted in it.

Inductively, backward accessible states can be characterized as follows: A state is backward accessible, if it occurs on the left hand side of a rule, and all states on this rule's right hand side are backward accessible.

```

inductive-set b-accessible :: ('Q,'L) ta-rule set  $\Rightarrow$  'Q set
  for  $\delta$ 
  where
   $\llbracket (q \rightarrow l \text{ qs}) \in \delta; \forall x. x \in \text{set } \text{qs} \implies x \in \text{b-accessible } \delta \rrbracket \implies q \in \text{b-accessible } \delta$ 

```

```

lemma b-accessibleI:
   $\llbracket (q \rightarrow l \text{ qs}) \in \delta; \text{set } \text{qs} \subseteq \text{b-accessible } \delta \rrbracket \implies q \in \text{b-accessible } \delta$ 
  by (auto intro: b-accessible.intros)

```

— States that accept a tree are backward accessible

```

lemma accs-is-b-accessible: accs  $\delta$  t q  $\implies$  q  $\in$  b-accessible  $\delta$ 
apply (induct rule: accs.induct)
apply (rule b-accessible.intros)
apply assumption
apply (fastforce simp add: in-set-conv-nth)
done

```

```

lemma b-acc-subset- $\delta$ -statesI: x  $\in$  b-accessible  $\delta \implies$  x  $\in$   $\delta$ -states  $\delta$ 
apply (erule b-accessible.cases)
apply (auto intro:  $\delta$ -statesI)
done

```

```

lemma b-acc-subset- $\delta$ -states: b-accessible  $\delta \subseteq$   $\delta$ -states  $\delta$ 
  by (auto simp add: b-acc-subset- $\delta$ -statesI)

```

```

lemma b-acc-finite[simp, intro!]: finite  $\delta \implies$  finite (b-accessible  $\delta$ )
apply (rule finite-subset[OF b-acc-subset- $\delta$ -states])
apply auto
done

```

— Backward accessible states accept at least one tree

```

lemma b-accessible-is-accs:

```

```

[[ q∈b-accessible (ta-rules TA);
  !!t. accs (ta-rules TA) t q ==> P
]] ==> P
proof (induct arbitrary: P rule: b-accessible.induct[case-names IH])
case (IH q l qs)

obtain ts where
  A: ∀ i < length qs. accs (ta-rules TA) (ts!i) (qs!i)
  length ts = length qs
proof -
from IH(β) have ∀ x ∈ set qs. ∃ t. accs (ta-rules TA) t x by auto
hence ∃ ts. (∀ i < length qs. accs (ta-rules TA) (ts!i) (qs!i))
  ∧ length ts = length qs
proof (induct qs)
  case Nil thus ?case by simp
next
  case (Cons q qs) then obtain ts where
    IHAPP: ∀ i < length qs. accs (ta-rules TA) (ts ! i) (qs ! i) and
    L: length ts = length qs
  by auto
  moreover from Cons obtain t where accs (ta-rules TA) t q by auto
  ultimately have
    ∀ i < length (q#qs). accs (ta-rules TA) ((t#ts) ! i) ((q#qs) ! i)
  apply auto
  apply (case-tac i)
  apply auto
  done
  thus ?case using L by auto
  qed
  thus thesis by (blast intro: that)
qed

from A show ?case
  apply (rule-tac IH(4)[OF accs.intros[OF IH(1)]])
  apply auto
  done
qed

```

— All trees remain accepted when reducing the rules to backward-accessible states

**lemma** accs-reduce-b-acc:

```

accs δ t q ==> accs (reduce-rules δ (b-accessible δ)) t q
apply (induct rule: accs.induct)
apply (rule accs.intros)
apply (rule reduce-rulesI)
apply assumption
apply (auto)
apply (rule-tac t=NODE f ts in accs-is-b-accessible)
apply (rule-tac accs.intros)
apply auto

```

**apply** (*simp only: in-set-conv-nth*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac exE*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac t=ts ! i in accs-is-b-accessible*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

— Shorthand notation for backward-reduction of a tree automaton  
**abbreviation** *ta-bwd-reduce TA == (ta-reduce TA (b-accessible (ta-rules TA)))*

— Backwards-reducing a tree automaton does not change its language  
**theorem** *ta-reduce-b-acc[simp]: ta-lang (ta-bwd-reduce TA) = ta-lang TA*  
**apply** (*rule sym*)  
**apply** (*unfold ta-reduce-def ta-lang-def*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: Let-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac x=q in beXI*)  
**apply** (*blast intro: accs-reduce-b-acc*)  
**apply** (*blast dest: accs-is-b-accessible*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac x=q in beXI*)  
**apply** (*blast intro: accs-mono[OF - reduce-rules-subset]*)  
 .

— Emptiness check by backward reduction. The language of a tree automaton is empty, if and only if no initial state is backwards-accessible.

**theorem** *empty-if-no-b-accessible:*  
*ta-lang TA = {}  $\longleftrightarrow$  ta-initial TA  $\cap$  b-accessible (ta-rules TA) = {}*  
**by** (*auto*)  
*simp add: ta-lang-def*  
*intro: accs-is-b-accessible b-accessible-is-accs*

### 3.4.5 Product Automaton

The product automaton of two tree automata accepts the intersection of the languages of the two automata.

**fun** *r-prod where*  
*r-prod (q1  $\rightarrow$  l1 qs1) (q2  $\rightarrow$  l2 qs2) = ((q1,q2)  $\rightarrow$  l1 (zip qs1 qs2))*

— Product rules

**definition**  *$\delta$ -prod  $\delta 1$   $\delta 2 ==$  {*  
*r-prod (q1  $\rightarrow$  l qs1) (q2  $\rightarrow$  l qs2) | q1 q2 l qs1 qs2.*  
*length qs1 = length qs2  $\wedge$*   
*(q1  $\rightarrow$  l qs1)  $\in \delta 1$   $\wedge$*   
*(q2  $\rightarrow$  l qs2)  $\in \delta 2$*   
*}*

**lemma**  *$\delta$ -prodI:*  $\llbracket$   
*length qs1 = length qs2;*  
*(q1  $\rightarrow$  l qs1)  $\in \delta 1$ ;*  
*(q2  $\rightarrow$  l qs2)  $\in \delta 2$   $\rrbracket \implies ((q1,q2) \rightarrow l (zip qs1 qs2)) \in \delta$ -prod  $\delta 1$   $\delta 2$   
**by** (*auto simp add:  $\delta$ -prod-def*)*

**lemma**  $\delta$ -prodE:

```

[[
  r ∈  $\delta$ -prod  $\delta 1$   $\delta 2$ ;
  !!q1 q2 l qs1 qs2. [[ length qs1 = length qs2;
                        (q1 → l qs1) ∈  $\delta 1$ ;
                        (q2 → l qs2) ∈  $\delta 2$ ;
                        r = ((q1, q2) → l (zip qs1 qs2))
                      ]] ⇒ P
]] ⇒ P
by (auto simp add:  $\delta$ -prod-def)

```

— With the product rules, only trees can be constructed that can also be constructed with the two original sets of rules

**lemma**  $\delta$ -prod-sound:

```

assumes A: accs ( $\delta$ -prod  $\delta 1$   $\delta 2$ ) t (q1, q2)
shows accs  $\delta 1$  t q1    accs  $\delta 2$  t q2
proof –
  {
    fix  $\delta$  q
    assume accs  $\delta$  t q     $\delta = (\delta$ -prod  $\delta 1$   $\delta 2)$     q=(q1, q2)
    hence accs  $\delta 1$  t q1 ∧ accs  $\delta 2$  t q2
    by (induct arbitrary:  $\delta 1$   $\delta 2$  q1 q2 rule: accs.induct)
        (auto intro: accs.intros simp add:  $\delta$ -prod-def)
  } with A show accs  $\delta 1$  t q1    accs  $\delta 2$  t q2 by auto
qed

```

— Any tree that can be constructed with both original sets of rules can also be constructed with the product rules

**lemma**  $\delta$ -prod-precise:

```

[[ accs  $\delta 1$  t q1; accs  $\delta 2$  t q2 ]] ⇒ accs ( $\delta$ -prod  $\delta 1$   $\delta 2$ ) t (q1, q2)
proof (induct arbitrary:  $\delta 2$  q2 rule: accs.induct[case-names step])
  case (step q1 l qs1  $\delta 1$  ts  $\delta 2$  q2)
  note [simp] = step.hyps(2,3)
  from step.hyps(2) obtain qs2 where
    I2: (q2 → l qs2) ∈  $\delta 2$ 
    !!i. i < length qs2 ⇒ accs  $\delta 2$  (ts ! i) (qs2 ! i) and
    [simp]: length qs2 = length ts
  by (rule-tac accs.cases[OF step.premis]) fastforce
  show ?case
  proof (rule accs.intros)
    from step.hyps(1) I2(1) show
      ((q1, q2) → l (zip qs1 qs2)) ∈  $\delta$ -prod  $\delta 1$   $\delta 2$  and
      [simp]: length ts = length (zip qs1 qs2)
    by (unfold  $\delta$ -prod-def) force+
  next
    fix i
    assume L: i < length (zip qs1 qs2)
    with step.hyps(4)[OF - I2(2), of i] have

```

$accs (\delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \ \delta 2) (ts ! i) (qs1 ! i, qs2 ! i)$   
**by** *simp*  
**also have**  $(qs1 ! i, qs2 ! i) = zip \ qs1 \ qs2 ! i$  **using** *L* **by** *auto*  
**finally show**  $accs (\delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \ \delta 2) (ts ! i) (zip \ qs1 \ qs2 ! i)$  .  
**qed**  
**qed**

**lemma**  $\delta\text{-prod-empty}[simp]$ :  
 $\delta\text{-prod } \{\} \ \delta = \{\}$   
 $\delta\text{-prod } \delta \ \{\} = \{\}$   
**by** (*unfold*  $\delta\text{-prod-def}$ ) *auto*

**lemma**  $\delta\text{-prod-2sng}[simp]$ :  
 $\llbracket rhl \ r1 \neq rhl \ r2 \rrbracket \implies \delta\text{-prod } \{r1\} \ \{r2\} = \{\}$   
 $\llbracket length \ (rhsq \ r1) \neq length \ (rhsq \ r2) \rrbracket \implies \delta\text{-prod } \{r1\} \ \{r2\} = \{\}$   
 $\llbracket rhl \ r1 = rhl \ r2; length \ (rhsq \ r1) = length \ (rhsq \ r2) \rrbracket$   
 $\implies \delta\text{-prod } \{r1\} \ \{r2\} = \{r\text{-prod } r1 \ r2\}$   
**apply** (*unfold*  $\delta\text{-prod-def}$ )  
**apply** (*cases* *r1*, *cases* *r2*, *auto*)  
**done**

**lemma**  $\delta\text{-prod-Un}[simp]$ :  
 $\delta\text{-prod } (\delta 1 \cup \delta 1') \ \delta 2 = \delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \ \delta 2 \cup \delta\text{-prod } \delta 1' \ \delta 2$   
 $\delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \ (\delta 2 \cup \delta 2') = \delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \ \delta 2 \cup \delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \ \delta 2'$   
**by** (*auto elim:*  $\delta\text{-prodE}$  *intro:*  $\delta\text{-prodI}$ )

The next two definitions are solely for technical reasons. They are required to allow simplification of expressions of the form  $\delta\text{-prod } (insert \ r \ \delta 1) \ \delta 2$  or  $\delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \ (insert \ r \ \delta 2)$ , without making the simplifier loop.

**definition**  $\delta\text{-prod-sng1 } r \ \delta 2 ==$   
*case* *r* *of*  $(q1 \rightarrow l \ qs1) \Rightarrow$   
 $\{ r\text{-prod } r \ (q2 \rightarrow l \ qs2) \mid$   
 $q2 \ qs2. length \ qs1 = length \ qs2 \wedge (q2 \rightarrow l \ qs2) \in \delta 2$   
 $\}$

**definition**  $\delta\text{-prod-sng2 } \delta 1 \ r ==$   
*case* *r* *of*  $(q2 \rightarrow l \ qs2) \Rightarrow$   
 $\{ r\text{-prod } (q1 \rightarrow l \ qs1) \ r \mid$   
 $q1 \ qs1. length \ qs1 = length \ qs2 \wedge (q1 \rightarrow l \ qs1) \in \delta 1$   
 $\}$

**lemma**  $\delta\text{-prod-sng-alt}$ :  
 $\delta\text{-prod-sng1 } r \ \delta 2 = \delta\text{-prod } \{r\} \ \delta 2$   
 $\delta\text{-prod-sng2 } \delta 1 \ r = \delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \ \{r\}$   
**apply** (*unfold*  $\delta\text{-prod-def}$   $\delta\text{-prod-sng1-def}$   $\delta\text{-prod-sng2-def}$ )  
**apply** (*auto split: ta-rule.split*)  
**done**

**lemmas**  $\delta\text{-prod-insert} =$   
 $\delta\text{-prod-Un}(1)[\mathbf{where} \ ?\delta 1.0 = \{x\}, \text{ simplified, folded } \delta\text{-prod-sng-alt}]$

$\delta$ -prod-Un(2)[**where** ? $\delta 2.0 = \{x\}$ , *simplified, folded  $\delta$ -prod-sng-alt*]  
**for**  $x$

— Product automaton

**definition** *ta-prod*  $TA1 TA2 ==$   
 ( *ta-initial* = *ta-initial*  $TA1 \times$  *ta-initial*  $TA2$ ,  
   *ta-rules* =  $\delta$ -prod (*ta-rules*  $TA1$ ) (*ta-rules*  $TA2$ )  
 )

**lemma** *ta-prod-correct-aux1*:

*ta-lang* (*ta-prod*  $TA1 TA2$ ) = *ta-lang*  $TA1 \cap$  *ta-lang*  $TA2$   
**by** (*unfold ta-lang-def ta-prod-def*) (*auto dest:  $\delta$ -prod-sound  $\delta$ -prod-precise*)

**lemma**  *$\delta$ -states-cart*:

$q \in \delta$ -states ( $\delta$ -prod  $\delta 1 \delta 2$ )  $\implies q \in \delta$ -states  $\delta 1 \times \delta$ -states  $\delta 2$   
**by** (*unfold  $\delta$ -states-def  $\delta$ -prod-def*)  
 (*force split: ta-rule.split simp add: set-zip*)

**lemma**  *$\delta$ -prod-finite* [*simp, intro*]:

*finite*  $\delta 1 \implies$  *finite*  $\delta 2 \implies$  *finite* ( $\delta$ -prod  $\delta 1 \delta 2$ )

**proof** —

**have**

$\delta$ -prod  $\delta 1 \delta 2$   
 $\subseteq (\lambda(r1,r2). \text{case } r1 \text{ of } (q1 \rightarrow l1 \text{ } qs1) \Rightarrow$   
   *case*  $r2 \text{ of } (q2 \rightarrow l2 \text{ } qs2) \Rightarrow$   
      $((q1,q2) \rightarrow l1 \text{ } (\text{zip } qs1 \text{ } qs2)))$   
 ‘ $(\delta 1 \times \delta 2)$ ’

**by** (*unfold  $\delta$ -prod-def*) *force*

**moreover assume** *finite*  $\delta 1$     *finite*  $\delta 2$

**ultimately show** ?*thesis*

**by** (*metis finite-imageI finite-cartesian-product finite-subset*)

**qed**

**lemma** *ta-prod-correct-aux2*:

**assumes**  $TA$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA1$     *tree-automaton*  $TA2$   
**shows** *tree-automaton* (*ta-prod*  $TA1 TA2$ )

**proof** —

**interpret**  $ta1$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA1$  **using**  $TA$  **by** *blast*

**interpret**  $ta2$ : *tree-automaton*  $TA2$  **using**  $TA$  **by** *blast*

**show** ?*thesis*

**apply** *unfold-locales*

**apply** (*unfold ta-prod-def*)

**apply** (*auto*)

*intro: ta1.is-subset ta2.is-subset  $\delta$ -prod-finite*

*dest:  $\delta$ -states-cart*

*simp add: ta1.finite-states ta2.finite-states*

*ta1.finite-rules ta2.finite-rules*)

**done**

**qed**

— The language of the product automaton is the intersection of the languages of the two original automata

**theorem** *ta-prod-correct*:

**assumes** *TA*: *tree-automaton TA1 tree-automaton TA2*

**shows**

*ta-lang (ta-prod TA1 TA2) = ta-lang TA1  $\cap$  ta-lang TA2*  
*tree-automaton (ta-prod TA1 TA2)*

**using** *ta-prod-correct-aux1*

*ta-prod-correct-aux2[OF TA]*

**by** *auto*

**lemma** *ta-prod-rta*:

**assumes** *TA*: *ranked-tree-automaton TA1 A ranked-tree-automaton TA2 A*

**shows** *ranked-tree-automaton (ta-prod TA1 TA2) A*

**proof** —

**interpret** *ta1*: *ranked-tree-automaton TA1 A using TA by blast*

**interpret** *ta2*: *ranked-tree-automaton TA2 A using TA by blast*

**interpret** *tap*: *tree-automaton (ta-prod TA1 TA2)*

**apply** (*rule ta-prod-correct-aux2*)

**by** *unfold-locales*

**show** *?thesis*

**apply** *unfold-locales*

**apply** (*unfold ta-prod-def  $\delta$ -prod-def*)

**apply** (*auto intro: ta1.ranked ta2.ranked*)

**done**

**qed**

### 3.4.6 Determinization

We only formalize the brute-force subset construction without reduction.

The basic idea of this construction is to construct an automaton where the states are sets of original states, and the lhs of a rule consists of all states that a term with given rhs and function symbol may be labeled by.

**context** *ranked-tree-automaton*

**begin**

— Left-hand side of subset rule for given symbol and rhs

**definition**  *$\delta_{ss}$ -lhs f ss ==*

*{ q | q qs. (q  $\rightarrow$  f qs)  $\in$   $\delta$   $\wedge$  list-all-zip ( $\in$ ) qs ss }*

— Subset construction

**inductive-set**  *$\delta_{ss}$  :: ('Q set, 'L) ta-rule set where*

*[[ A f = Some (length ss);*

*ss  $\in$  lists {s. s  $\subseteq$  ta-rstates TA};*

*s =  $\delta_{ss}$ -lhs f ss*



$\mathbb{I} \implies (s \rightarrow f ss) \in \delta ss$

**lemma**  $\delta ssI$ :

**assumes**  $A: A f = \text{Some } (\text{length } ss)$   
 $ss \in \text{lists } \{s. s \subseteq \text{ta-rstates } TA\}$

**shows**

$(\delta ss\text{-lhs } f ss) \rightarrow f ss) \in \delta ss$

**using**  $\delta ss.\text{intros}[\text{where } s=(\delta ss\text{-lhs } f ss)] A$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma**  $\delta ss\text{-subset}[\text{simp}, \text{intro!}]: \delta ss\text{-lhs } f ss \subseteq Q$

**by** (*unfold ta-rstates-def*  $\delta ss\text{-lhs-def}$ ) (*auto intro:*  $\delta\text{-statesI}$ )

**lemma**  $\delta ss\text{-finite}[\text{simp}, \text{intro!}]: \text{finite } \delta ss$

**proof** –

**have**  $\delta ss \subseteq \bigcup ((\lambda f. (\lambda(s,ss). (s \rightarrow f ss))$   
 $\quad \text{'}\{s. s \subseteq Q\}$   
 $\quad \times (\text{lists } \{s. s \subseteq Q\} \cap \{l. \text{length } l = \text{the } (A f)\}))$   
 $\quad \text{' } F)$

(**is**  $\subseteq \bigcup ((\lambda f. ?tr f \text{' } ?prod f) \text{' } F)$ )

**proof** (*intro equalityI subsetI*)

**fix**  $r$

**assume**  $r \in \delta ss$

**then obtain**  $f s ss$  **where**

$U: r = (s \rightarrow f ss)$   
 $A f = \text{Some } (\text{length } ss)$   
 $ss \in \text{lists } \{s. s \subseteq Q\}$   
 $s = \delta ss\text{-lhs } f ss$

**by** (*force elim!*:  $\delta ss.\text{cases}$ )

**from**  $U(4)$  **have**  $s \subseteq Q$  **by** *simp*

**moreover from**  $U(2)$  **have**  $\text{length } ss = \text{the } (A f)$  **by** *simp*

**ultimately have**  $(s, ss) \in ?prod f$  **using**  $U(3)$  **by** *auto*

**hence**  $(s \rightarrow f ss) \in ?tr f \text{' } ?prod f$  **by** *auto*

**moreover from**  $U(2)$  **have**  $f \in F$  **by** *auto*

**ultimately show**  $r \in \bigcup ((\lambda f. ?tr f \text{' } ?prod f) \text{' } F)$  **using**  $U(1)$  **by** *auto*

**qed**

**moreover have** *finite* ...

**by** (*auto intro!*: *finite-imageI finite-SigmaI lists-of-len-fin*)

**ultimately show** *?thesis* **by** (*blast intro: finite-subset*)

**qed**

**lemma**  $\delta ss\text{-det}: \mathbb{I} (q \rightarrow f qs) \in \delta ss; (q' \rightarrow f qs) \in \delta ss \mathbb{I} \implies q = q'$

**by** (*auto elim!*:  $\delta ss.\text{cases}$ )

**lemma**  $\delta ss\text{-accs-sound}$ :

**assumes**  $A: \text{accs } \delta t q$

**obtains**  $s$  **where**

$s \subseteq Q$

$q \in s$

$accs \delta ss t s$   
**proof** –  
**have**  $\exists s \subseteq Q. q \in s \wedge accs-laz \delta ss t s$  **using**  $A[unfolded\ accs-laz]$   
**proof** (*induct*  $\delta \equiv \delta t q$  *rule:*  $accs-laz.induct[case-names\ step]$ )  
**case** (*step*  $q f qs ts$ )  
**hence**  $I$ :  
 $(q \rightarrow f qs) \in \delta$   
*list-all-zip* ( $accs-laz \delta$ )  $ts qs$   
*list-all-zip* ( $\lambda t q. \exists s. s \subseteq Q \wedge q \in s \wedge accs-laz \delta ss t s$ )  $ts qs$   
**by** *simp-all*  
**from**  $I(3)$  **obtain**  $ss$  **where**  $SS$ :  
 $ss \in lists \{s. s \subseteq Q\}$   
*list-all-zip* ( $\in$ )  $qs ss$   
*list-all-zip* ( $accs-laz \delta ss$ )  $ts ss$   
**by** (*erule-tac laz-swap-ex*) *auto*  
**from**  $I(2)$   $SS(2)$  **have**  
 $LEN[simp]: length\ qs = length\ ts \quad length\ ss = length\ ts$   
**by** (*auto simp add: list-all-zip-alt*)  
**from** *ranked[OF I(1)]* **have**  $AF: A f = Some (length\ ts)$  **by** *simp*  
  
**from**  $\delta ss I[of\ f\ ss, OF - SS(1)]\ AF$  **have**  
 $RULE-S: ((\delta ss-lhs\ f\ ss) \rightarrow f\ ss) \in \delta ss$   
**by** *simp*  
  
**from**  $accs-laz.intros[OF\ RULE-S\ SS(3)]$  **have**  
 $G1: accs-laz\ \delta ss (NODE\ f\ ts) (\delta ss-lhs\ f\ ss) .$   
**from**  $I(1)\ SS(2)$  **have**  $q \in (\delta ss-lhs\ f\ ss)$  **by** (*auto simp add: \delta ss-lhs-def*)  
**thus** *?case* **using**  $G1$  **by** *auto*  
**qed**  
**thus** *?thesis*  
**apply** (*elim exE conjE*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac that*)  
**apply** *assumption*  
**apply** (*auto simp add: accs-laz*)  
**done**  
**qed**

**lemma**  $\delta ss-accs-precise$ :  
**assumes**  $A: accs \delta ss t s \quad q \in s$   
**shows**  $accs \delta t q$   
**using**  $A$   
**unfolding**  $accs-laz$   
**proof** (*induct*  $\delta \equiv \delta ss t s$   
*arbitrary:*  $q$   
*rule:*  $accs-laz.induct[case-names\ step]$ )  
**case** (*step*  $s f ss ts$ )  
**hence**  $I$ :  
 $(s \rightarrow f ss) \in \delta ss$

```

    list-all-zip (accs-laz  $\delta ss$ ) ts ss
    list-all-zip ( $\lambda t s. \forall q \in s. \text{accs-laz } \delta t q$ ) ts ss
    q  $\in s$ 
    by (auto simp add: Ball-def)

from I(2) have [simp]: length ss = length ts
  by (simp add: list-all-zip-alt)

from I(1) have SS:
  A f = Some (length ts)
  ss  $\in$  lists {s. s  $\subseteq$  Q}
  s =  $\delta ss$ -lhs f ss
  by (force elim!:  $\delta ss$ .cases)+

from I(4) SS(3) obtain qs where
  RULE: (q  $\rightarrow$  f qs)  $\in$   $\delta$  and
  QSISS: list-all-zip ( $\in$ ) qs ss
  by (auto simp add:  $\delta ss$ -lhs-def)
from I(3) QSISS have CA: list-all-zip (accs-laz  $\delta$ ) ts qs
  by (auto simp add: list-all-zip-alt)
from accs-laz.intros[OF RULE CA] show ?case .
qed

```

— Determinization

```

definition detTA == (| ta-initial = { s. s  $\subseteq$  Q  $\wedge$  s  $\cap$  Qi  $\neq$  {} },
  ta-rules =  $\delta ss$  |)

```

```

theorem detTA-is-ta[simp, intro]:
  det-tree-automaton detTA A
  apply (unfold-locales)
  apply (auto simp add: detTA-def elim:  $\delta ss$ .cases)
  done

```

```

theorem detTA-lang[simp]:
  ta-lang (detTA) = ta-lang TA
  apply (unfold ta-lang-def detTA-def)
  apply safe
  apply simp-all

```

**proof** —

```

  fix t s
  assume A:
    s  $\subseteq$  Q  $\wedge$  s  $\cap$  Qi  $\neq$  {}
    accs  $\delta ss$  t s
  from A(1) obtain qi where QI: qi  $\in$  s   qi  $\in$  Qi by auto

```

```

  from  $\delta ss$ -accs-precise[OF A(2) QI(1)] have accs  $\delta t$  qi .
  with QI(2) show  $\exists qi \in Qi. \text{accs } \delta t qi$  by blast

```

```

next
  fix t qi
  assume A:
    qi ∈ Qi
    accs δ t qi
  from δss-accs-sound[OF A(2)] obtain s where SS:
    s ⊆ Q
    qi ∈ s
    accs δss t s .
  with A(1) show ∃ s ⊆ Q. s ∩ Qi ≠ {} ∧ accs δss t s by blast
qed

```

```

lemmas detTA-correct = detTA-is-ta detTA-lang
end

```

### 3.4.7 Completion

To each deterministic tree automaton, rules and states can be added to make it complete, without changing its language.

```

context det-tree-automaton

```

```

begin

```

```

— States of the complete automaton

```

```

definition Qcomplete == insert None (Some `Q)

```

```

lemma Qcomplete-finite[simp, intro!]: finite Qcomplete
  by (auto simp add: Qcomplete-def)

```

```

— Rules of the complete automaton

```

```

definition δcomplete :: ('Q option, 'L) ta-rule set where

```

```

  δcomplete == (remap-rule Some ` δ)
    ∪ { (None → f qs) | f qs.
      A f = Some (length qs)
      ∧ qs ∈ lists Qcomplete
      ∧ ¬(∃ qo qso. (qo → f qso) ∈ δ ∧ qs = map Some qso) }

```

```

lemma δ-states-complete: q ∈ δ-states δcomplete ⇒ q ∈ Qcomplete

```

```

  apply (erule δ-statesE)
  apply (unfold δcomplete-def Qcomplete-def)
  apply auto
  apply (case-tac x)
  apply (auto simp add: ta-rstates-def intro: δ-statesI) [1]
  apply (case-tac x)
  apply (auto simp add: ta-rstates-def dest: δ-statesI)
  done

```

```

definition

```

```

  completeTA == (| ta-initial = Some `Qi, ta-rules = δcomplete |)

```

```

lemma  $\delta$ complete-finite[simp, intro]: finite  $\delta$ complete
proof -
  have  $\delta$ complete  $\subseteq$  legal-rules Qcomplete
  apply (rule)
  apply (rule legal-rulesI)
  apply assumption
  apply (case-tac x)
  apply (unfold  $\delta$ complete-def Qcomplete-def ta-rstates-def) [1]
  apply auto
  apply (case-tac xa)
  apply (auto dest:  $\delta$ -statesI)
  apply (case-tac xa)
  apply (auto dest:  $\delta$ -statesI)
  apply (unfold  $\delta$ complete-def Qcomplete-def ta-rstates-def) [1]
  apply (auto)
  apply (case-tac xa)
  apply (auto intro: ranked)
  done
  thus ?thesis by (auto intro: finite-subset)
qed

theorem completeTA-is-ta: complete-tree-automaton completeTA A
proof (standard, goal-cases)
  case 1 thus ?case by (simp add: completeTA-def)
next
  case 2 thus ?case by (simp add: completeTA-def)
next
  case 3 thus ?case
  apply (auto simp add: completeTA-def  $\delta$ complete-def)
  apply (case-tac x)
  apply (auto intro: ranked)
  done
next
  case 4 thus ?case
  apply (auto simp add: completeTA-def  $\delta$ complete-def)
  apply (case-tac x, case-tac xa)
  apply (auto intro: deterministic) [1]
  apply (case-tac x)
  apply auto [1]
  apply (case-tac x)
  apply auto [1]
  done
next
  case prems: (5 qs f)
  {
    fix qo qso
    assume R: (qo  $\rightarrow$  f qso)  $\in$   $\delta$  and [simp]: qs=map Some qso
    hence ((Some qo)  $\rightarrow$  f qs)  $\in$  remap-rule Some ' $\delta$  by force
  }

```

```

hence ?case by (simp add: completeTA-def  $\delta$ complete-def) blast
} moreover {
  assume A:  $\neg(\exists qo\ qso. (qo \rightarrow f\ qso) \in \delta \wedge qs = \text{map}\ \text{Some}\ qso)$ 

  have (Some ' Qi  $\cup$   $\delta$ -states  $\delta$ complete)  $\subseteq$  Qcomplete
    apply (auto intro:  $\delta$ -states-complete)
    apply (simp add: Qcomplete-def ta-rstates-def)
    done

  with prems have B: qs $\in$ lists Qcomplete
    by (auto simp add: completeTA-def ta-rstates-def)

  from A B prems(2) have ?case
    apply (rule-tac x=None in exI)
    apply (simp add: completeTA-def  $\delta$ complete-def)
    done
} ultimately show ?case by blast
qed

```

**theorem** completeTA-lang: ta-lang completeTA = ta-lang TA

**proof** (intro equalityI subsetI)

— This direction is done by a monotonicity argument

**fix** t

**assume** t $\in$ ta-lang TA

**then obtain** qi **where** qi $\in$ Qi accs  $\delta$  t qi **by** (auto simp add: ta-lang-def)

**hence**

QI: Some qi  $\in$  Some'Qi **and**

ACCS: accs (remap-rule Some' $\delta$ ) t (Some qi)

**by** (auto intro: remap-accs1)

**have** (remap-rule Some' $\delta$ )  $\subseteq$   $\delta$ complete **by** (unfold  $\delta$ complete-def) auto

**with** ACCS **have** accs  $\delta$ complete t (Some qi) **by** (blast dest: accs-mono)

**thus** t $\in$ ta-lang completeTA **using** QI

**by** (auto simp add: ta-lang-def completeTA-def)

**next**

**fix** t

**assume** A: t $\in$ ta-lang completeTA

**then obtain** qi **where**

QI: qi $\in$ Qi **and**

ACCS: accs  $\delta$ complete t (Some qi)

**by** (auto simp add: ta-lang-def completeTA-def)

**moreover**

{

**fix** qi

**have**  $\llbracket$  accs  $\delta$ complete t (Some qi)  $\rrbracket \implies$  accs  $\delta$  t qi

**unfolding** accs-laz

**proof** (induct  $\delta \equiv \delta$ complete t q $\equiv$ Some qi

arbitrary: qi

rule: accs-laz.induct[case-names step])

**case** (step f qs ts qi)

```

hence  $I$ :
  ((Some qi)  $\rightarrow$   $f$  qs)  $\in$   $\delta$ complete
  list-all-zip (accs-laz  $\delta$ complete) ts qs
  list-all-zip ( $\lambda t q. (\forall qo. q = \text{Some } qo \longrightarrow \text{accs-laz } \delta t qo)$ ) ts qs
  by auto
from  $I(1)$  have ((Some qi)  $\rightarrow$   $f$  qs)  $\in$  remap-rule Some  $\delta$ 
  by (unfold  $\delta$ complete-def) auto
then obtain qso where
  RULE: (qi  $\rightarrow$   $f$  qso)  $\in$   $\delta$  and
  QSF: qs = map Some qso
  apply (auto)
  apply (case-tac x)
  apply auto
  done
from  $I(3)$  QSF have ACCS: list-all-zip (accs-laz  $\delta$ ) ts qso
  by (auto simp add: list-all-zip-alt)
from accs-laz.intros[OF RULE ACCS] show ?case .
qed
}
ultimately have accs  $\delta t$  qi by blast
thus  $t \in \text{ta-lang } TA$  using QI by (auto simp add: ta-lang-def)
qed

```

```

lemmas completeTA-correct = completeTA-is-ta completeTA-lang
end

```

### 3.4.8 Complement

A deterministic, complete tree automaton can be transformed into an automaton accepting the complement language by complementing its initial states.

```

context complete-tree-automaton
begin

```

— Complement automaton, i.e. that accepts exactly the trees not accepted by this automaton

```

definition complementTA == (|
  ta-initial =  $Q - Q_i$ ,
  ta-rules =  $\delta$  |)

```

```

lemma cta-rules[simp]: ta-rules complementTA =  $\delta$ 
  by (auto simp add: complementTA-def)

```

```

theorem complementTA-correct:
  ta-lang complementTA = ranked-trees A - ta-lang TA (is ?T1)
  complete-tree-automaton complementTA A (is ?T2)

```

```

proof —
  show ?T1

```

```

apply (unfold ta-lang-def complementTA-def)
apply (force intro: accs-is-ranked dest: accs-unique label-all)
done

have QSS: !!q. q∈ta-rstates complementTA ⇒ q∈Q
by (auto simp add: complementTA-def ta-rstates-def)

show ?T2
apply (unfold-locales)
apply (unfold complementTA-def)[4]
apply (auto simp add: deterministic ranked
        intro: complete QSS)
done
qed

end

```

## 3.5 Regular Tree Languages

### 3.5.1 Definitions

**definition** *regular-languages* :: ('L  $\rightarrow$  nat)  $\Rightarrow$  'L tree set set  
**where** *regular-languages* A ==  
 { ta-lang TA | (TA::(nat,'L) tree-automaton-rec).  
                   ranked-tree-automaton TA A }

**lemma** *rtlE*:  
**fixes** L :: 'L tree set  
**assumes** A: L∈*regular-languages* A  
**obtains** TA::(nat,'L) tree-automaton-rec **where**  
   L=ta-lang TA  
   ranked-tree-automaton TA A  
**using** A *that*  
**by** (unfold *regular-languages-def*) *blast*

**context** *ranked-tree-automaton*  
**begin**

**lemma** (**in** *ranked-tree-automaton*) *rtlI[simp]*:  
**shows** ta-lang TA ∈ *regular-languages* A  
**proof** –  
 — Obtain injective mapping from the finite set of states to the natural numbers  
**from** *finite-imp-inj-to-nat-seg[OF finite-states]* **obtain** f :: 'Q  $\Rightarrow$  nat  
**where** *INJMAP*: inj-on f (ta-rstates TA) **by** *blast*  
 — Remap automaton. The language remains the same.  
**from** *remap-lang[OF INJMAP]* **have** LE: ta-lang (ta-remap f TA) = ta-lang  
 TA .  
**moreover** **have** *ranked-tree-automaton* (ta-remap f TA) A ..  
**ultimately show** ?*thesis* **by** (auto simp add: *regular-languages-def*)



**qed**

It is sometimes more handy to obtain a complete, deterministic tree automaton accepting a given regular language.

**theorem** *obtain-complete:*

**obtains**  $TAC :: ('Q \text{ set option}, 'L) \text{ tree-automaton-rec}$  **where**  
 $ta\text{-lang } TAC = ta\text{-lang } TA$   
 $complete\text{-tree-automaton } TAC A$

**proof** –

**from** *detTA-correct* **have**  
 $DT: det\text{-tree-automaton } detTA A$  **and**  
 $[simp]: ta\text{-lang } detTA = ta\text{-lang } TA$   
**by** *simp-all*

**interpret** *dt: det-tree-automaton detTA A using DT .*

**from** *dt.completeTA-correct* **have**  $G:$

$ta\text{-lang } (det\text{-tree-automaton}.completeTA \ detTA \ A) = ta\text{-lang } TA$   
 $complete\text{-tree-automaton } (det\text{-tree-automaton}.completeTA \ detTA \ A) \ A$   
**by** *simp-all*

**thus** *?thesis* **by** (*blast intro: that*)

**qed**

**end**

**lemma** *rtlE-complete:*

**fixes**  $L :: 'L \text{ tree set}$   
**assumes**  $A: L \in \text{regular-languages } A$   
**obtains**  $TA :: (nat, 'L) \text{ tree-automaton-rec}$  **where**  
 $L = ta\text{-lang } TA$   
 $complete\text{-tree-automaton } TA \ A$

**proof** –

**from** *rtlE[OF A]* **obtain**  $TA :: (nat, 'L) \text{ tree-automaton-rec}$  **where**  
 $[simp, symmetric]: L = ta\text{-lang } TA$  **and**  
 $RT: ranked\text{-tree-automaton } TA \ A .$

**interpret** *ta: ranked-tree-automaton TA A using RT .*

**obtain**  $TAC :: (nat \text{ set option}, 'L) \text{ tree-automaton-rec}$   
**where**  $[simp]: ta\text{-lang } TAC = L$  **and**  $CT: complete\text{-tree-automaton } TAC \ A$   
**by** (*rule-tac ta.obtain-complete*) *auto*

**interpret** *tac: complete-tree-automaton TAC A using CT .*

— Obtain injective mapping from the finite set of states to the natural numbers

**from** *finite-imp-inj-to-nat-seg[OF tac.finite-states]*

**obtain**  $f :: nat \text{ set option} \Rightarrow nat$  **where**  
 $INJMAP: inj\text{-on } f \ (ta\text{-rstates } TAC)$  **by** *blast*

— Remap automaton. The language remains the same.  
**from** *tac.remap-lang*[*OF INJMAP*] **have** *LE: ta-lang (ta-remap f TAC) = L*  
**by** *simp*  
**have** *complete-tree-automaton (ta-remap f TAC) A*  
**using** *tac.remap-cta*[*OF INJMAP*] .  
**thus** *?thesis by (rule-tac that[*OF LE[symmetric]*])*  
**qed**

### 3.5.2 Closure Properties

In this section, we derive the standard closure properties of regular languages, i.e. that regular languages are closed under union, intersection, complement, and difference, as well as that the empty and the universal language are regular.

Note that we do not formalize homomorphisms or tree transducers here.

**theorem** (*in finite-alphabet*) *rtl-empty*[*simp, intro!*]:  $\{\} \in \text{regular-languages } A$   
**by** (*rule ranked-tree-automaton.rtlI*[*OF ta-empty-rta, simplified*])

**theorem** *rtl-union-closed*:

$\llbracket L1 \in \text{regular-languages } A; L2 \in \text{regular-languages } A \rrbracket$   
 $\implies L1 \cup L2 \in \text{regular-languages } A$

**proof** (*elim rtlE*)

**fix** *TA1 TA2*

**assume** *TA*[*simp*]: *ranked-tree-automaton TA1 A ranked-tree-automaton TA2 A*

**and** [*simp*]: *L1=ta-lang TA1 L2=ta-lang TA2*

**interpret** *ta1: ranked-tree-automaton TA1 A by simp*

**interpret** *ta2: ranked-tree-automaton TA2 A by simp*

**have** *ta-lang (ta-union-wrap TA1 TA2) = ta-lang TA1  $\cup$  ta-lang TA2*

**apply** (*rule ta-union-wrap-correct*)

**by** *unfold-locales*

**with** *ranked-tree-automaton.rtlI*[*OF ta-union-wrap-rta*[*OF TA*]] **show** *?thesis*

**by** (*simp*)

**qed**

**theorem** *rtl-inter-closed*:

$\llbracket L1 \in \text{regular-languages } A; L2 \in \text{regular-languages } A \rrbracket \implies$   
 $L1 \cap L2 \in \text{regular-languages } A$

**proof** (*elim rtlE, goal-cases*)

**case** (*1 TA1 TA2*)

**with** *ta-prod-correct*[*of TA1 TA2*] *ta-prod-rta*[*of TA1 A TA2*] **have**

*L: ta-lang (ta-prod TA1 TA2) = L1  $\cap$  L2* **and**

*A: ranked-tree-automaton (ta-prod TA1 TA2) A*

```

    by (simp-all add: ranked-tree-automaton.axioms)
  show ?thesis using ranked-tree-automaton.rtlI[OF A]
    by (simp add: L)
qed

theorem rtl-complement-closed:
   $L \in \text{regular-languages } A \implies \text{ranked-trees } A - L \in \text{regular-languages } A$ 
proof (elim rtlE-complete, goal-cases)
  case prems: (1 TA)
  then interpret ta: complete-tree-automaton TA A by simp

  from ta.complementTA-correct have
    [simp]: ta-lang (ta.complementTA) = ranked-trees A - ta-lang TA and
    CTA: complete-tree-automaton ta.complementTA A by auto
  interpret cta: complete-tree-automaton ta.complementTA A using CTA .

  from cta.rtlI prems(1) show ?case by simp
qed

theorem (in finite-alphabet) rtl-univ:
   $\text{ranked-trees } A \in \text{regular-languages } A$ 
  using rtl-complement-closed[OF rtl-empty]
  by simp

theorem rtl-diff-closed:
  fixes L1 :: 'L tree set
  assumes A[simp]: L1  $\in$  regular-languages A    L2  $\in$  regular-languages A
  shows L1 - L2  $\in$  regular-languages A
proof -
  from rtlE[OF A(1)] obtain TA1::(nat,'L) tree-automaton-rec where
    L1: L1=ta-lang TA1 and
    RT1: ranked-tree-automaton TA1 A
  .
  from rtlE[OF A(2)] obtain TA2::(nat,'L) tree-automaton-rec where
    L2: L2=ta-lang TA2 and
    RT2: ranked-tree-automaton TA2 A
  .

  interpret ta1: ranked-tree-automaton TA1 A using RT1 .
  interpret ta2: ranked-tree-automaton TA2 A using RT2 .

  from ta1.lang-is-ranked have ALT: L1 - L2 = L1  $\cap$  (ranked-trees A - L2)
    by (auto simp add: L1 L2)

  show ?thesis
    unfolding ALT
    by (simp add: rtl-complement-closed rtl-inter-closed)
qed

```

```

lemmas rtl-closed = finite-alphabet.rtl-empty finite-alphabet.rtl-univ
           rtl-complement-closed
           rtl-inter-closed rtl-union-closed rtl-diff-closed

```

**end**

## 4 Abstract Tree Automata Algorithms

```

theory AbsAlgo
imports
  Ta
  Collections-Examples.Exploration
  Collections.CollectionsV1
begin

no-notation fun-rel-syn (infixr  $\langle \rightarrow \rangle$  60)

```

This theory defines tree automata algorithms on an abstract level, that is using non-executable datatypes and constructs like sets, set-collecting operations, etc.

These algorithms are then refined to executable algorithms in Section 5.

### 4.1 Word Problem

First, a recursive version of the *accs*-predicate is defined.

```

fun r-match :: 'a set list  $\Rightarrow$  'a list  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  r-match [] []  $\longleftrightarrow$  True |
  r-match (A#AS) (a#as)  $\longleftrightarrow$  a  $\in$  A  $\wedge$  r-match AS as |
  r-match - -  $\longleftrightarrow$  False

```

— *AbsAlgo.r-match* accepts two lists, if they have the same length and the elements in the second list are contained in the respective elements of the first list:

```

lemma r-match-alt:
  r-match L l  $\longleftrightarrow$  length L = length l  $\wedge$  ( $\forall i < \text{length } l. \exists i \in L!i$ )
apply (induct L l rule: r-match.induct)
apply auto
apply (case-tac i)
apply auto
done

```

— Whether a rule matches the given state, label and list of sets of states

```

fun r-matchc where
  r-matchc q l Qs (qr  $\rightarrow$  lr qsr)  $\longleftrightarrow$  q=qr  $\wedge$  l=lr  $\wedge$  r-match Qs qsr

```

— recursive version of *accs*-predicate

```

fun faccs :: ('Q,'L) ta-rule set  $\Rightarrow$  'L tree  $\Rightarrow$  'Q set where
  faccs  $\delta$  (NODE f ts) = (
    let Qs = map (faccs  $\delta$ ) (ts) in
    {q.  $\exists r \in \delta$ . r-matchc q f Qs r }
  )

```

**lemma** faccs-correct-aux:

```

q $\in$ faccs  $\delta$  n = accs  $\delta$  n q (is ?T1)
(map (faccs  $\delta$ ) ts = map ( $\lambda t$ . { q . accs  $\delta$  t q }) ts) (is ?T2)

```

**proof** –

```

have ( $\forall q$ . q $\in$ faccs  $\delta$  n = accs  $\delta$  n q)
   $\wedge$  (map (faccs  $\delta$ ) ts = map ( $\lambda t$ . { q . accs  $\delta$  t q }) ts)

```

**proof** (induct rule: compat-tree-tree-list.induct)

**case** (NODE f ts)

**thus** ?case

**apply** (intro allI iffI)

**apply** simp

**apply** (erule bexE)

**apply** (case-tac x)

**apply** simp

**apply** (rule accs.intros)

**apply** assumption

**apply** (unfold r-match-alt)

**apply** simp

**apply** fastforce

**apply** simp

**apply** (erule accs.cases)

**apply** auto

**apply** (rule-tac x=qa  $\rightarrow$  f qs **in** bexI)

**apply** simp

**apply** (unfold r-match-alt)

**apply** auto

**done**

**qed** auto

**thus** ?T1 ?T2 **by** auto

**qed**

**theorem** faccs-correct1: q $\in$ faccs  $\delta$  n  $\implies$  accs  $\delta$  n q

**by** (simp add: faccs-correct-aux)

**theorem** faccs-correct2: accs  $\delta$  n q  $\implies$  q $\in$ faccs  $\delta$  n

**by** (simp add: faccs-correct-aux)

**lemmas** faccs-correct = faccs-correct1 faccs-correct2

**lemma** faccs-alt: faccs  $\delta$  t = {q. accs  $\delta$  t q} **by** (auto intro: faccs-correct)

## 4.2 Backward Reduction and Emptiness Check

### 4.2.1 Auxiliary Definitions

**inductive-set** *bacc-step* :: ('Q,'L) ta-rule set  $\Rightarrow$  'Q set  $\Rightarrow$  'Q set  
**for**  $\delta$  Q  
**where**  
 $\llbracket r \in \delta; \text{set } (rhs\ q\ r) \subseteq Q \rrbracket \Longrightarrow lhs\ r \in \text{bacc-step } \delta\ Q$

— If a set is closed under adding all states that are reachable from the set by one backward step, then this set contains all backward accessible states.

**lemma** *b-accs-as-closed*:

**assumes** *A*: *bacc-step*  $\delta$  *Q*  $\subseteq$  *Q*

**shows** *b-accessible*  $\delta \subseteq Q$

**proof** (*rule subsetI*)

**fix** *q*

**assume** *q*  $\in$  *b-accessible*  $\delta$

**thus** *q*  $\in$  *Q*

**proof** (*induct rule: b-accessible.induct*)

**fix** *q f qs*

**assume** *BC*: (*q*  $\rightarrow$  *f qs*)  $\in$   $\delta$

$\llbracket x. x \in \text{set } qs \Longrightarrow x \in \text{b-accessible } \delta$

$\llbracket x. x \in \text{set } qs \Longrightarrow x \in Q$

**from** *bacc-step.intros*[*OF BC(1)*] *BC(3)* **have** *q*  $\in$  *bacc-step*  $\delta$  *Q* **by** *auto*

**with** *A* **show** *q*  $\in$  *Q* **by** *blast*

**qed**

**qed**

### 4.2.2 Algorithms

First, the basic workset algorithm is specified. Then, it is refined to contain a counter for each rule, that counts the number of undiscovered states on the RHS. For both levels of abstraction, a version that computes the backwards reduction, and a version that checks for emptiness is specified.

Additionally, a version of the algorithm that computes a witness for non-emptiness is provided.

Levels of abstraction:

$\alpha$  On this level, the state consists of a set of discovered states and a workset.

$\alpha'$  On this level, the state consists of a set of discovered states, a workset and a map from rules to number of undiscovered rhs states. This map can be used to make the discovery of rules that have to be considered more efficient.

$\alpha$  - **Level:** **type-synonym** ('Q,'L) *br-state* = 'Q set  $\times$  'Q set

— Set of states that are non-empty (accept a tree) after adding the state  $q$  to the set of discovered states

**definition** *br-dsq*

$:: ('Q, 'L) \text{ ta-rule set} \Rightarrow 'Q \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) \text{ br-state} \Rightarrow 'Q \text{ set}$

**where**

$br-dsq \delta q == \lambda(Q, W). \{ lhs \ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge set \ (rhsq \ r) \subseteq (Q - (W - \{q\})) \}$

— Description of a step: One state is removed from the workset, and all new states that become non-empty due to this state are added to, both, the workset and the set of discovered states

**inductive-set** *br-step*

$:: ('Q, 'L) \text{ ta-rule set} \Rightarrow (('Q, 'L) \text{ br-state} \times ('Q, 'L) \text{ br-state}) \text{ set}$

**for**  $\delta$  **where**

$\llbracket$   
 $q \in W;$   
 $Q' = Q \cup br-dsq \delta q (Q, W);$   
 $W' = W - \{q\} \cup (br-dsq \delta q (Q, W) - Q)$   
 $\rrbracket \Rightarrow ((Q, W), (Q', W')) \in br-step \ \delta$

— Termination condition for backwards reduction: The workset is empty

**definition** *br-cond*  $:: ('Q, 'L) \text{ br-state set}$

**where**  $br-cond == \{(Q, W). W \neq \{\}\}$

— Termination condition for emptiness check: The workset is empty or a non-empty initial state has been discovered

**definition** *bre-cond*  $:: 'Q \text{ set} \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) \text{ br-state set}$

**where**  $bre-cond \ Qi == \{(Q, W). W \neq \{\} \wedge (Qi \cap Q = \{\})\}$

— Set of all states that occur on the lhs of a constant-rule

**definition** *br-iq*  $:: ('Q, 'L) \text{ ta-rule set} \Rightarrow 'Q \text{ set}$

**where**  $br-iq \ \delta == \{ lhs \ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge rhsq \ r = [] \}$

— Initial state for the iteration

**definition** *br-initial*  $:: ('Q, 'L) \text{ ta-rule set} \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) \text{ br-state}$

**where**  $br-initial \ \delta == (br-iq \ \delta, br-iq \ \delta)$

— Invariant for the iteration:

- States on the workset have been discovered
- Only accessible states have been discovered
- If a state is non-empty due to a rule whose rhs-states have been discovered and processed (i.e. are in  $Q - W$ ), then the lhs state of the rule has also been discovered.
- The set of discovered states is finite

**definition** *br-invar*  $:: ('Q, 'L) \text{ ta-rule set} \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) \text{ br-state set}$

**where**  $br-invar \ \delta == \{(Q, W).$

$$\begin{aligned}
& W \subseteq Q \wedge \\
& Q \subseteq b\text{-accessible } \delta \wedge \\
& b\text{-step } \delta (Q - W) \subseteq Q \wedge \\
& \text{finite } Q \}
\end{aligned}$$

**definition** *br-algo*  $\delta ==$  (  
*wa-cond* = *br-cond*,  
*wa-step* = *br-step*  $\delta$ ,  
*wa-initial* = {*br-initial*  $\delta$ },  
*wa-invar* = *br-invar*  $\delta$   
 $\rangle$

**definition** *bre-algo*  $Qi \delta ==$  (  
*wa-cond* = *bre-cond*  $Qi$ ,  
*wa-step* = *br-step*  $\delta$ ,  
*wa-initial* = {*br-initial*  $\delta$ },  
*wa-invar* = *br-invar*  $\delta$   
 $\rangle$

— Termination: Either a new state is added, or the workset decreases.

**definition** *br-termrel*  $\delta ==$   
 $\{ (Q', Q). Q \subset Q' \wedge Q' \subseteq b\text{-accessible } \delta \} \langle *lex* \rangle \text{ finite-psubset}$

**lemma** *bre-cond-imp-br-cond*[*intro*, *simp*]: *bre-cond*  $Qi \subseteq$  *br-cond*  
**by** (*auto simp add: br-cond-def bre-cond-def*)

**lemma** *br-termrel-wf*[*simp*, *intro!*]: *finite*  $\delta \implies$  *wf* (*br-termrel*  $\delta$ )  
**apply** (*unfold br-termrel-def*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: wf-bounded-supset*)  
**done**

— Only accessible states are discovered

**lemma** *br-dsq-ss*:

**assumes**  $A: (Q, W) \in \text{br-invar } \delta \quad W \neq \{ \} \quad q \in W$

**shows** *br-dsq*  $\delta q (Q, W) \subseteq b\text{-accessible } \delta$

**proof** (*rule subsetI*)

**fix**  $q'$

**assume**  $B: q' \in \text{br-dsq } \delta q (Q, W)$

**then obtain**  $r$  **where**

$R: q' = \text{lhs } r \quad r \in \delta$  **and**

$S: \text{set } (\text{rhs } r) \subseteq (Q - (W - \{q\}))$

**by** (*unfold br-dsq-def*) *auto*

**note**  $S$

**also have**  $(Q - (W - \{q\})) \subseteq b\text{-accessible } \delta$  **using**  $A(1, 3)$

**by** (*auto simp add: br-invar-def*)

**finally show**  $q' \in b\text{-accessible } \delta$  **using**  $R$

**by** (*cases r*)

(*auto intro: b-accessible.intros*)



qed

**lemma** *br-step-in-termrel*:

**assumes**  $A: \Sigma \in \text{br-cond} \quad \Sigma \in \text{br-invar} \ \delta \quad (\Sigma, \Sigma') \in \text{br-step} \ \delta$   
**shows**  $(\Sigma', \Sigma) \in \text{br-termrel} \ \delta$

**proof** –

**obtain**  $Q \ W \ Q' \ W'$  **where**

$[simp]: \Sigma = (Q, W) \quad \Sigma' = (Q', W')$   
**by** (*cases*  $\Sigma$ , *cases*  $\Sigma'$ , *auto*)

**obtain**  $q$  **where**

$QIW: q \in W$  **and**  
 $ASSFMT[simp]: Q' = Q \cup \text{br-dsq} \ \delta \ q \ (Q, W)$   
 $W' = W - \{q\} \cup (\text{br-dsq} \ \delta \ q \ (Q, W) - Q)$   
**by** (*auto intro: br-step.cases[OF A(3)[simplified]]*)

**from**  $A(2)$  **have**  $[simp]: \text{finite } Q$

**by** (*auto simp add: br-invar-def*)

**from**  $A(2)[\text{unfolded br-invar-def}]$  **have**  $[simp]: \text{finite } W$

**by** (*auto simp add: finite-subset*)

**from**  $A(1)$  **have**  $WNE: W \neq \{\}$  **by** (*unfold br-cond-def*) *auto*

**note**  $DSQSS = \text{br-dsq-ss}[\text{OF } A(2)[\text{simplified}]] \ WNE \ QIW$

{

**assume**  $\text{br-dsq} \ \delta \ q \ (Q, W) - Q = \{\}$

**hence** *?thesis* **using**  $QIW$

**by** (*simp add: br-termrel-def set-simps*)

} **moreover** {

**assume**  $\text{br-dsq} \ \delta \ q \ (Q, W) - Q \neq \{\}$

**hence**  $Q \subset Q'$  **by** *auto*

**moreover from**  $DSQSS \ A(2)[\text{unfolded br-invar-def}]$  **have**

$Q' \subseteq \text{b-accessible } \delta$

**by** *auto*

**ultimately have** *?thesis*

**by** (*auto simp add: br-termrel-def*)

} **ultimately show** *?thesis* **by** *blast*

qed

**lemma** *br-invar-initial* $[simp]: \text{finite } \delta \implies (\text{br-initial } \delta) \in \text{br-invar} \ \delta$

**apply** (*auto simp add: br-initial-def br-invar-def br-ig-def*)

**apply** (*case-tac r*)

**apply** (*fastforce intro: b-accessible.intros*)

**apply** (*fastforce elim!: bacc-step.cases*)

**done**

**lemma** *br-invar-step*:

**assumes**  $[simp]: \text{finite } \delta$

**assumes**  $A: \Sigma \in \text{br-cond} \quad \Sigma \in \text{br-invar} \ \delta \quad (\Sigma, \Sigma') \in \text{br-step} \ \delta$

**shows**  $\Sigma' \in \text{br-invar} \ \delta$

**proof** –  
**obtain**  $Q\ W\ Q'\ W'$  **where**  $SF[simp]: \Sigma=(Q, W)\ \Sigma'=(Q', W')$   
**by** (*cases*  $\Sigma$ , *cases*  $\Sigma'$ , *auto*)  
**obtain**  $q$  **where**  
 $QIW: q \in W$  **and**  
 $ASSFMT[simp]: Q' = Q \cup br\text{-}dsq\ \delta\ q\ (Q, W)$   
 $W' = W - \{q\} \cup (br\text{-}dsq\ \delta\ q\ (Q, W) - Q)$   
**by** (*auto intro: br-step.cases[OF A(3)[simplified]]*)  
  
**from**  $A(1)$  **have**  $WNE: W \neq \{\}$  **by** (*unfold br-cond-def*) *auto*  
  
**have**  $DSQSS: br\text{-}dsq\ \delta\ q\ (Q, W) \subseteq b\text{-accessible}\ \delta$   
**using**  $br\text{-}dsq\text{-}ss[OF\ A(2)[simplified]\ WNE\ QIW]$  .  
  
**show** *?thesis*  
**apply** (*simp add: br-invar-def del: ASSFMT*)  
**proof** (*intro conjI*)  
**from**  $A(2)$  **have**  $W \subseteq Q$  **by** (*simp add: br-invar-def*)  
**thus**  $W' \subseteq Q'$  **by** *auto*  
**next**  
**from**  $A(2)$  **have**  $Q \subseteq b\text{-accessible}\ \delta$  **by** (*simp add: br-invar-def*)  
**with**  $DSQSS$  **show**  $Q' \subseteq b\text{-accessible}\ \delta$  **by** *auto*  
**next**  
**show**  $bacc\text{-}step\ \delta\ (Q' - W') \subseteq Q'$   
**apply** (*rule subsetI*)  
**apply** (*erule bacc-step.cases*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: br-dsq-def*)  
**done**  
**next**  
**show** *finite*  $Q'$  **using**  $A(2)$  **by** (*simp add: br-invar-def br-dsq-def*)  
**qed**  
**qed**

**lemma** *br-invar-final*:  
 $\forall \Sigma. \Sigma \in wa\text{-}invar\ (br\text{-}algo\ \delta) \wedge \Sigma \notin wa\text{-}cond\ (br\text{-}algo\ \delta)$   
 $\longrightarrow fst\ \Sigma = b\text{-accessible}\ \delta$   
**apply** (*simp add: br-invar-def br-cond-def br-algo-def*)  
**apply** (*auto intro: rev-subsetD[OF - b-accs-as-closed]*)  
**done**

**theorem** *br-while-algo*:  
**assumes**  $FIN[simp]: finite\ \delta$   
**shows** *while-algo*  $(br\text{-}algo\ \delta)$   
**apply** (*unfold locales*)  
**apply** (*simp-all add: br-algo-def br-invar-step br-invar-initial*  
 $br\text{-}step\text{-}in\text{-}termrel$ )  
**apply** (*rule-tac r=br-termrel*  $\delta$  **in** *wf-subset*)

**apply** (*auto intro: br-step-in-termrel*)  
**done**

**lemma** *bre-invar-final*:

$\forall \Sigma. \Sigma \in wa\text{-invar } (bre\text{-algo } Qi \delta) \wedge \Sigma \notin wa\text{-cond } (bre\text{-algo } Qi \delta)$   
 $\longrightarrow ((Qi \cap fst \Sigma = \{\}) \longleftrightarrow (Qi \cap b\text{-accessible } \delta = \{\}))$   
**apply** (*simp add: br-invar-def bre-cond-def bre-algo-def*)  
**apply** *safe*  
**apply** (*auto dest!: b-accs-as-closed*)  
**done**

**theorem** *bre-while-algo*:

**assumes** *FIN[*simp*]: finite  $\delta$*   
**shows** *while-algo (bre-algo  $Qi \delta$ )*  
**apply** (*unfold-locales*)  
**apply** (*unfold bre-algo-def*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: br-invar-initial br-step-in-termrel*  
*intro: br-invar-step*  
*dest: rev-subsetD[OF - bre-cond-imp-br-cond]*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac r=br-termrel  $\delta$  in wf-subset*)  
**apply** (*auto intro: br-step-in-termrel*  
*dest: rev-subsetD[OF - bre-cond-imp-br-cond]*)  
**done**

**$\alpha'$  - Level** Here, an optimization is added: For each rule, the algorithm now maintains a counter that counts the number of undiscovered states on the rules RHS. Whenever a new state is discovered, this counter is decremented for all rules where the state occurs on the RHS. The LHS states of rules where the counter falls to 0 are added to the worklist. The idea is that decrementing the counter is more efficient than checking whether all states on the rule's RHS have been discovered.

A similar algorithm is sketched in [2](Exercise 1.18).

**type-synonym** (*'Q, 'L*) *br'-state* = *'Q set*  $\times$  *'Q set*  $\times$  (*'Q, 'L ta-rule*  $\rightarrow$  *nat*)

— Abstraction to  $\alpha$ -level

**definition** *br'- $\alpha$*  :: (*'Q, 'L*) *br'-state*  $\Rightarrow$  (*'Q, 'L*) *br-state*  
**where** *br'- $\alpha$*  = ( $\lambda(Q, W, rcm). (Q, W)$ )

**definition** *br'-invar-add* :: (*'Q, 'L*) *ta-rule set*  $\Rightarrow$  (*'Q, 'L*) *br'-state set*

**where** *br'-invar-add*  $\delta$  ==  $\{(Q, W, rcm). (\forall r \in \delta. rcm \ r = \text{Some } (card \ (set \ (rhsq \ r) - (Q - W)))) \wedge \{lhs \ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge the \ (rcm \ r) = 0\} \subseteq Q\}$   
**}**

**definition** *br'-invar* :: (*'Q, 'L*) *ta-rule set*  $\Rightarrow$  (*'Q, 'L*) *br'-state set*

**where** *br'-invar*  $\delta$  == *br'-invar-add*  $\delta \cap \{\Sigma. br'\text{-}\alpha \ \Sigma \in br\text{-invar} \ \delta\}$

**inductive-set** *br'-step*

:: ('Q,'L) ta-rule set  $\Rightarrow$  (('Q,'L) br'-state  $\times$  ('Q,'L) br'-state) set

**for**  $\delta$  **where**

[[  $q \in W$ ;

$Q' = Q \cup \{ lhs\ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge q \in set\ (rhsq\ r) \wedge the\ (rcm\ r) \leq 1 \}$ ;

$W' = (W - \{q\})$

$\cup (\{ lhs\ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge q \in set\ (rhsq\ r) \wedge the\ (rcm\ r) \leq 1 \}$   
 $- Q)$ ;

!! $r. r \in \delta \Rightarrow rcm'\ r = ($  if  $q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)$  then

Some (the (rcm r) - 1)

else rcm r

)

]]  $\Rightarrow ((Q, W, rcm), (Q', W', rcm')) \in br'\text{-step}\ \delta$

**definition** *br'-cond* :: ('Q,'L) br'-state set

**where** *br'-cond* == {(Q, W, rcm).  $W \neq \{\}$ }

**definition** *bre'-cond* :: 'Q set  $\Rightarrow$  ('Q,'L) br'-state set

**where** *bre'-cond*  $Qi$  == {(Q, W, rcm).  $W \neq \{\} \wedge (Qi \cap Q = \{\})$ }

**inductive-set** *br'-initial* :: ('Q,'L) ta-rule set  $\Rightarrow$  ('Q,'L) br'-state set

**for**  $\delta$  **where**

[[ !! $r. r \in \delta \Rightarrow rcm\ r = Some\ (card\ (set\ (rhsq\ r)))$  ]]

$\Rightarrow (br\text{-iq}\ \delta, br\text{-iq}\ \delta, rcm) \in br'\text{-initial}\ \delta$

**definition** *br'-algo*  $\delta$  == (

*wa-cond* = *br'-cond*,

*wa-step* = *br'-step*  $\delta$ ,

*wa-initial* = *br'-initial*  $\delta$ ,

*wa-invar* = *br'-invar*  $\delta$

)

**definition** *bre'-algo*  $Qi\ \delta$  == (

*wa-cond* = *bre'-cond*  $Qi$ ,

*wa-step* = *br'-step*  $\delta$ ,

*wa-initial* = *br'-initial*  $\delta$ ,

*wa-invar* = *br'-invar*  $\delta$

)

**lemma** *br'-step-invar*:

**assumes** *finite[simp]*: finite  $\delta$

**assumes** *INV*:  $\Sigma \in br'\text{-invar-add}\ \delta$   $br'\text{-}\alpha\ \Sigma \in br\text{-invar}\ \delta$

**assumes** *STEP*:  $(\Sigma, \Sigma') \in br'\text{-step}\ \delta$

**shows**  $\Sigma' \in br'\text{-invar-add}\ \delta$

**proof** -

**obtain**  $Q\ W\ rcm$  **where** *[simp]*:  $\Sigma = (Q, W, rcm)$

**by** (cases  $\Sigma$ ) auto

**obtain**  $Q'\ W'\ rcm'$  **where** *[simp]*:  $\Sigma' = (Q', W', rcm')$

**by** (cases  $\Sigma'$ ) auto

**from** *STEP* **obtain**  $q$  **where**

*STEPF*:

$q \in W$

$Q' = Q \cup \{ lhs\ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge q \in set\ (rhsq\ r) \wedge the\ (rcm\ r) \leq 1 \}$

$W' = (W - \{q\})$

$\cup (\{ lhs\ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge q \in set\ (rhsq\ r) \wedge the\ (rcm\ r) \leq 1 \}$   
 $- Q)$

$!!r. r \in \delta \implies rcm'\ r = ($  *if*  $q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)$  *then*

*Some*  $(the\ (rcm\ r) - 1)$

*else*  $rcm\ r$

$)$

**by** (*auto elim: br'-step.cases*)

**from** *INV*[*unfolded br'-invar-def br-invar-def br'-invar-add-def br'- $\alpha$ -def, simplified*]

**have** *INV*:

$(\forall r \in \delta. rcm\ r = Some\ (card\ (set\ (rhsq\ r) - (Q - W))))$

$\{ lhs\ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge the\ (rcm\ r) = 0 \} \subseteq Q$

$W \subseteq Q$

$Q \subseteq b\text{-accessible}\ \delta$

*bacc-step*  $\delta\ (Q - W) \subseteq Q$

*finite*  $Q$

**by** *auto*

{

**fix**  $r$

**assume**  $A: r \in \delta$

**with** *INV*(1) **have** *RCMR*:  $rcm\ r = Some\ (card\ (set\ (rhsq\ r) - (Q - W)))$

**by** *auto*

**have**  $rcm'\ r = Some\ (card\ (set\ (rhsq\ r) - (Q' - W')))$

**proof** (*cases*  $q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)$ )

**case** *False*

**with** *A STEP*F(4) **have**  $rcm'\ r = rcm\ r$  **by** *auto*

**moreover from** *STEPF INV*(3) *False* **have**

$set\ (rhsq\ r) - (Q - W) = set\ (rhsq\ r) - (Q' - W')$

**by** *auto*

**ultimately show** *?thesis*

**by** (*simp add: RCMR*)

**next**

**case** *True*

**with** *A STEP*F(4) *RCMR* **have**

$rcm'\ r = Some\ ((card\ (set\ (rhsq\ r) - (Q - W))) - 1)$

**by** *simp*

**moreover from** *STEPF INV*(3) *True* **have**

$set\ (rhsq\ r) - (Q - W) = insert\ q\ (set\ (rhsq\ r) - (Q' - W'))$

$q \notin (set\ (rhsq\ r) - (Q' - W'))$

**by** *auto*

**ultimately show** *?thesis*

```

    by (simp add: RCMR card-insert-disjoint')
  qed
} moreover {
  fix r
  assume A:  $r \in \delta$    the (rcm' r) = 0
  have lhs  $r \in Q'$  proof (cases  $q \in \text{set } (rhsq\ r)$ )
    case True
      with A(1) STEPF(4) have  $rcm'\ r = \text{Some } (the\ (rcm\ r) - 1)$  by auto
      with A(2) have  $the\ (rcm\ r) - 1 = 0$  by auto
      hence  $the\ (rcm\ r) \leq 1$  by auto
      with STEPF(2) A(1) True show ?thesis by auto
    next
      case False
      with A(1) STEPF(4) have  $rcm'\ r = rcm\ r$  by auto
      with A(2) have  $the\ (rcm\ r) = 0$  by auto
      with A(1) INV(2) have  $lhs\ r \in Q$  by auto
      with STEPF(2) show ?thesis by auto
  qed
} ultimately show ?thesis
  by (auto simp add: br'-invar-add-def)
qed

```

```

lemma br'-invar-initial:
  br'-initial  $\delta \subseteq br'$ -invar-add  $\delta$ 
  apply safe
  apply (erule br'-initial.cases)
  apply (unfold br'-invar-add-def)
  apply (auto simp add: br-iq-def)
  done

```

```

lemma br'-rcm-aux':
  [ [  $(Q, W, rcm) \in br'$ -invar  $\delta$ ;  $q \in W$  ]
     $\implies \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (rhsq\ r) \wedge the\ (rcm\ r) \leq Suc\ 0\}$ 
      =  $\{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (rhsq\ r) \wedge \text{set } (rhsq\ r) \subseteq (Q - (W - \{q\}))\}$  ]
  proof (intro subsetI equalityI, goal-cases)
    case prems: (1 r)
    hence B:  $r \in \delta$     $q \in \text{set } (rhsq\ r)$     $the\ (rcm\ r) \leq Suc\ 0$  by auto
    from B(1,3) prems(1)[unfolded br'-invar-def br'-invar-add-def] have
      CARD:  $\text{card } (\text{set } (rhsq\ r) - (Q - W)) \leq Suc\ 0$ 
    by auto
    from prems(1)[unfolded br'-invar-def br-invar-def br'- $\alpha$ -def] have WSQ:  $W \subseteq Q$ 

    by auto
    have  $\text{set } (rhsq\ r) - (Q - W) = \{q\}$ 
  proof -
    from B(2) prems(2) have R1:  $q \in \text{set } (rhsq\ r) - (Q - W)$  by auto
  moreover
  {
    fix x

```

```

    assume A:  $x \neq q \quad x \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) - (Q - W)$ 
    with R1 have  $\{x, q\} \subseteq \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) - (Q - W)$  by auto
    hence  $\text{card } \{x, q\} \leq \text{card } (\text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) - (Q - W))$ 
      by (auto simp add: card-mono)
    with CARD A(1) have False by auto
  }
  ultimately show ?thesis by auto
qed
with prems(2) WSQ have  $\text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \subseteq Q - (W - \{q\})$  by auto
thus ?case using B(1,2) by auto
next
case prems: (2 r)
hence B:  $r \in \delta \quad q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \quad \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \subseteq Q - (W - \{q\})$  by auto
with prems(1)[unfolded br'-invar-def br'-invar-add-def
  br'- $\alpha$ -def br-invar-def]
have
  IC:  $W \subseteq Q \quad \text{the } (\text{rcm } r) = \text{card } (\text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) - (Q - W))$ 
  by auto
have  $\text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) - (Q - W) \subseteq \{q\}$  using B(2,3) IC(1) by auto
from card-mono[OF - this] have  $\text{the } (\text{rcm } r) \leq \text{Suc } 0$  by (simp add: IC(2))
with B(1,2) show ?case by auto
qed

lemma br'-rcm-aux:
  assumes A:  $(Q, W, \text{rcm}) \in \text{br}'\text{-invar } \delta \quad q \in W$ 
  shows  $\{\text{lhs } r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \wedge \text{the } (\text{rcm } r) \leq \text{Suc } 0\}$ 
    =  $\{\text{lhs } r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \wedge \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \subseteq (Q - (W - \{q\}))\}$ 
proof -
  have  $\{\text{lhs } r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \wedge \text{the } (\text{rcm } r) \leq \text{Suc } 0\}$ 
    =  $\text{lhs } \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \wedge \text{the } (\text{rcm } r) \leq \text{Suc } 0\}$ 
    by auto
  also from br'-rcm-aux'[OF A] have
    ... =  $\text{lhs } \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \wedge \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \subseteq Q - (W - \{q\})\}$ 
    by simp
  also have
    ... =  $\{\text{lhs } r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \wedge \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \subseteq (Q - (W - \{q\}))\}$ 
    by auto
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

lemma br'-invar-QcD:
   $(Q, W, \text{rcm}) \in \text{br}'\text{-invar } \delta \implies \{\text{lhs } r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \subseteq (Q - W)\} \subseteq Q$ 
proof (safe)
  fix r
  assume A:  $(Q, W, \text{rcm}) \in \text{br}'\text{-invar } \delta \quad r \in \delta \quad \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r) \subseteq Q - W$ 
  from A(1)[unfolded br'-invar-def br'-invar-add-def br'- $\alpha$ -def br-invar-def,
    simplified]
  have
    IC:  $W \subseteq Q$ 

```

$finite\ Q$   
 $(\forall r \in \delta. rcm\ r = Some\ (card\ (set\ (rhsq\ r) - (Q - W))))$   
 $\{lhs\ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge the\ (rcm\ r) = 0\} \subseteq Q$  **by auto**  
**from**  $IC(3)\ A(2,3)$  **have**  $the\ (rcm\ r) = 0$  **by auto**  
**with**  $IC(4)\ A(2)$  **show**  $lhs\ r \in Q$  **by auto**  
**qed**

**lemma**  $br'-rcm-aux2$ :  
 $\llbracket (Q, W, rcm) \in br'-invar\ \delta; q \in W \rrbracket$   
 $\implies Q \cup br-dsq\ \delta\ q\ (Q, W)$   
 $= Q \cup \{lhs\ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge q \in set\ (rhsq\ r) \wedge the\ (rcm\ r) \leq Suc\ 0\}$   
**apply**  $(simp\ only: br'-rcm-aux)$   
**apply**  $(unfold\ br-dsq-def)$   
**apply**  $simp$   
**apply**  $(frule\ br'-invar-QcD)$   
**apply**  $auto$   
**done**

**lemma**  $br'-rcm-aux3$ :  
 $\llbracket (Q, W, rcm) \in br'-invar\ \delta; q \in W \rrbracket$   
 $\implies br-dsq\ \delta\ q\ (Q, W) - Q$   
 $= \{lhs\ r \mid r. r \in \delta \wedge q \in set\ (rhsq\ r) \wedge the\ (rcm\ r) \leq Suc\ 0\} - Q$   
**apply**  $(simp\ only: br'-rcm-aux)$   
**apply**  $(unfold\ br-dsq-def)$   
**apply**  $simp$   
**apply**  $(frule\ br'-invar-QcD)$   
**apply**  $auto$   
**done**

**lemma**  $br'-step-abs$ :  
 $\llbracket$   
 $\Sigma \in br'-invar\ \delta;$   
 $(\Sigma, \Sigma') \in br'-step\ \delta$   
 $\rrbracket \implies (br'-\alpha\ \Sigma, br'-\alpha\ \Sigma') \in br-step\ \delta$   
**apply**  $(cases\ \Sigma, cases\ \Sigma', simp)$   
**apply**  $(erule\ br'-step.cases)$   
**apply**  $(simp\ add: br'-\alpha-def)$   
**apply**  $(rule-tac\ q=q\ in\ br-step.intros)$   
**apply**  $simp$   
**apply**  $(simp\ only: br'-rcm-aux2)$   
**apply**  $(simp\ only: br'-rcm-aux3)$   
**done**

**lemma**  $br'-initial-abs$ :  $br'-\alpha\ (br'-initial\ \delta) = \{br-initial\ \delta\}$   
**apply**  $(force\ simp\ add: br-initial-def\ br'-\alpha-def$   
 $elim: br'-initial.cases$   
 $intro: br'-initial.intros)$   
**done**



**lemma** *br'-cond-abs*:  $\Sigma \in \text{br}'\text{-cond} \longleftrightarrow (\text{br}'\text{-}\alpha \Sigma) \in \text{br}\text{-cond}$

**by** (*cases*  $\Sigma$ )

(*simp add*: *br'-cond-def br-cond-def br'-alpha-def image-Collect*  
*br'-algo-def br-algo-def*)

**lemma** *bre'-cond-abs*:  $\Sigma \in \text{bre}'\text{-cond } Qi \longleftrightarrow (\text{br}'\text{-}\alpha \Sigma) \in \text{bre}\text{-cond } Qi$

**by** (*cases*  $\Sigma$ ) (*simp add*: *bre'-cond-def bre-cond-def br'-alpha-def image-Collect*  
*bre'-algo-def bre-algo-def*)

**lemma** *br'-invar-abs*:  $\text{br}'\text{-}\alpha \text{'br}'\text{-invar } \delta \subseteq \text{br}\text{-invar } \delta$

**by** (*auto simp add*: *br'-invar-def*)

**theorem** *br'-pref-br*: *wa-precise-refine* (*br'-algo*  $\delta$ ) (*br-algo*  $\delta$ ) *br'-alpha*

**apply** *unfold-locales*

**apply** (*simp-all add*: *br'-algo-def br-algo-def*)

**apply** (*simp-all add*: *br'-cond-abs br'-step-abs br'-invar-abs br'-initial-abs*)

**done**

**interpretation** *br'-pref*: *wa-precise-refine* *br'-algo*  $\delta$  *br-algo*  $\delta$  *br'-alpha*

**using** *br'-pref-br* .

**theorem** *br'-while-algo*:

*finite*  $\delta \implies \text{while-algo}$  (*br'-algo*  $\delta$ )

**apply** (*rule* *br'-pref.wa-intro*)

**apply** (*simp add*: *br-while-algo*)

**apply** (*simp-all add*: *br'-algo-def br-algo-def*)

**apply** (*simp add*: *br'-invar-def*)

**apply** (*erule* (3) *br'-step-invar*)

**apply** (*simp add*: *br'-invar-initial*)

**done**

**lemma** *fst-br'-alpha*:  $\text{fst} (\text{br}'\text{-}\alpha s) = \text{fst } s$  **by** (*cases*  $s$ ) (*simp add*: *br'-alpha-def*)

**lemmas** *br'-invar-final* =

*br'-pref.transfer-correctness*[*OF* *br-invar-final*, *unfolded* *fst-br'-alpha*]

**theorem** *bre'-pref-br*: *wa-precise-refine* (*bre'-algo*  $Qi \delta$ ) (*bre-algo*  $Qi \delta$ ) *br'-alpha*

**apply** *unfold-locales*

**apply** (*simp-all add*: *bre'-algo-def bre-algo-def*)

**apply** (*simp-all add*: *bre'-cond-abs br'-step-abs br'-invar-abs br'-initial-abs*)

**done**

**interpretation** *bre'-pref*:

*wa-precise-refine* *bre'-algo*  $Qi \delta$  *bre-algo*  $Qi \delta$  *br'-alpha*

**using** *bre'-pref-br* .

**theorem** *bre'-while-algo*:

*finite*  $\delta \implies \text{while-algo}$  (*bre'-algo*  $Qi \delta$ )

```

apply (rule br'-pref.wa-intro)
apply (simp add: br'-while-algo)
apply (simp-all add: br'-algo-def br'-algo-def)
apply (simp add: br'-invar-def)
apply (erule (3) br'-step-invar)
apply (simp add: br'-invar-initial)
done

```

**lemmas** *br'-invar-final* =  
*br'-pref.transfer-correctness*[*OF br'-invar-final, unfolded fst-br'-α*]

**Implementing a Step** In this paragraph, it is shown how to implement a step of the *br'*-algorithm by iteration over the rules that have the discovered state on their RHS.

**definition** *br'-inner-step*  
 $:: ('Q, 'L) \text{ ta-rule} \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) \text{ br'-state} \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) \text{ br'-state}$   
**where**  
*br'-inner-step* ==  $\lambda r (Q, W, rcm). \text{ let } c = \text{the } (rcm \ r) \text{ in } ($   
   if  $c \leq 1$  then insert (lhs *r*) *Q* else *Q*,  
   if  $c \leq 1 \wedge (\text{lhs } r) \notin Q$  then insert (lhs *r*) *W* else *W*,  
    $rcm (r \mapsto (c - (1 :: \text{nat})))$   
 $)$

**definition** *br'-inner-invar*  
 $:: ('Q, 'L) \text{ ta-rule set} \Rightarrow 'Q \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) \text{ br'-state}$   
 $\Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) \text{ ta-rule set} \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) \text{ br'-state} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$   
**where**  
*br'-inner-invar rules* *q* ==  $\lambda(Q, W, rcm) \text{ it } (Q', W', rcm')$ .  
 $Q' = Q \cup \{ \text{lhs } r \mid r. r \in \text{rules-it} \wedge \text{the } (rcm \ r) \leq 1 \} \wedge$   
 $W' = (W - \{q\}) \cup (\{ \text{lhs } r \mid r. r \in \text{rules-it} \wedge \text{the } (rcm \ r) \leq 1 \} - Q) \wedge$   
 $(\forall r. rcm' \ r = (\text{if } r \in \text{rules-it} \text{ then } \text{Some } (\text{the } (rcm \ r) - 1) \text{ else } rcm \ r))$

**lemma** *br'-inner-invar-imp-final*:  
 $\llbracket q \in W; \text{br'-inner-invar } \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (rhsq \ r)\} \ q \ (Q, W - \{q\}, rcm) \ \{\} \ \Sigma' \rrbracket$   
 $\implies ((Q, W, rcm), \Sigma') \in \text{br'-step } \delta$   
**apply** (*unfold br'-inner-invar-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (rule *br'-step.intros*)  
**apply** *assumption*  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *br'-inner-invar-step*:  
 $\llbracket q \in W; \text{br'-inner-invar } \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (rhsq \ r)\} \ q \ (Q, W - \{q\}, rcm) \ \text{it } \Sigma';$   
 $r \in \text{it}; \text{it} \subseteq \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (rhsq \ r)\}$   
 $\rrbracket \implies \text{br'-inner-invar } \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (rhsq \ r)\} \ q \ (Q, W - \{q\}, rcm)$

$(it-\{r\}) (br'-inner-step\ r\ \Sigma')$

**apply** (*cases*  $\Sigma'$ , *simp*)  
**apply** (*unfold* *br'-inner-invar-def* *br'-inner-step-def* *Let-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *br'-inner-invar-initial*:

$\llbracket q \in W \rrbracket \implies br'-inner-invar\ \{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}\ q\ (Q, W - \{q\}, rcm)$   
 $\{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}\ (Q, W - \{q\}, rcm)$   
**apply** (*simp* *add*: *br'-inner-invar-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *br'-inner-step-proof*:

**fixes**  $\alpha s :: '\Sigma \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L)\ br'-state$   
**fixes**  $cstep :: ('Q, 'L)\ ta-rule \Rightarrow '\Sigma \Rightarrow '\Sigma$   
**fixes**  $\Sigma h :: '\Sigma$   
**fixes**  $cinvar :: ('Q, 'L)\ ta-rule\ set \Rightarrow '\Sigma \Rightarrow bool$

**assumes** *iterable-set*: *set-iteratei*  $\alpha$  *invar* *iteratei*  
**assumes** *invar-initial*: *cinvar*  $\{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}\ \Sigma h$   
**assumes** *invar-step*:  
 $\llbracket it\ r\ \Sigma. \llbracket r \in it; it \subseteq \{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}; cinvar\ it\ \Sigma \rrbracket$   
 $\implies cinvar\ (it-\{r\})\ (cstep\ r\ \Sigma)$   
**assumes** *step-desc*:  
 $\llbracket it\ r\ \Sigma. \llbracket r \in it; it \subseteq \{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}; cinvar\ it\ \Sigma \rrbracket$   
 $\implies \alpha s\ (cstep\ r\ \Sigma) = br'-inner-step\ r\ (\alpha s\ \Sigma)$   
**assumes** *it-set-desc*: *invar* *it-set*  $\alpha$  *it-set* =  $\{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}$

**assumes** *QIW[simp]*:  $q \in W$

**assumes**  *$\Sigma$ -desc[simp]*:  $\alpha s\ \Sigma = (Q, W, rcm)$   
**assumes**  *$\Sigma h$ -desc[simp]*:  $\alpha s\ \Sigma h = (Q, W - \{q\}, rcm)$

**shows**  $(\alpha s\ \Sigma, \alpha s\ (iteratei\ it-set\ (\lambda-. True)\ cstep\ \Sigma h)) \in br'-step\ \delta$

**proof** –

**interpret** *set-iteratei*  $\alpha$  *invar* *iteratei* **by** *fact*

**show** *?thesis*

**apply** (*rule-tac*  
 $I = \lambda it\ \Sigma. cinvar\ it\ \Sigma$   
 $\wedge br'-inner-invar\ \{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}\ q\ (Q, W - \{q\}, rcm)$   
 $it\ (\alpha s\ \Sigma)$

**in** *iterate-rule-P*)

**apply** (*simp-all*  
 $add$ : *it-set-desc* *invar-initial* *br'-inner-invar-initial* *invar-step*  
*step-desc* *br'-inner-invar-step*)  
**apply** (*rule* *br'-inner-invar-imp-final*)

```

apply (rule QIW)
apply simp
done
qed

```

**Computing Witnesses** The algorithm is now refined further, such that it stores, for each discovered state, a witness for non-emptiness, i.e. a tree that is accepted with the discovered state.

**definition** *witness-prop*  $\delta$   $m$  ==  $\forall q t. m\ q = \text{Some } t \longrightarrow \text{accs } \delta\ t\ q$

— Construct a witness for the LHS of a rule, provided that the map contains witnesses for all states on the RHS:

```

definition construct-witness
:: ('Q  $\rightarrow$  'L tree)  $\Rightarrow$  ('Q,'L) ta-rule  $\Rightarrow$  'L tree
where
construct-witness Q r == NODE (rhsl r) (List.map ( $\lambda q. \text{the } (Q\ q)$ ) (rhsq r))

```

**lemma** *witness-propD*:  $\llbracket \text{witness-prop } \delta\ m; m\ q = \text{Some } t \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{accs } \delta\ t\ q$   
**by** (*auto simp add: witness-prop-def*)

**lemma** *construct-witness-correct*:  
 $\llbracket \text{witness-prop } \delta\ Q; r \in \delta; \text{set } (r_{\text{hsq}}\ r) \subseteq \text{dom } Q \rrbracket$   
 $\Longrightarrow \text{accs } \delta\ (\text{construct-witness } Q\ r)\ (\text{lhs } r)$   
**apply** (*unfold construct-witness-def witness-prop-def*)  
**apply** (*cases r*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*erule accs.intros*)  
**apply** (*auto dest: nth-mem*)  
**done**

**lemma** *construct-witness-eq*:  
 $\llbracket Q \mid \text{set } (r_{\text{hsq}}\ r) = Q' \mid \text{set } (r_{\text{hsq}}\ r) \rrbracket \Longrightarrow$   
 $\text{construct-witness } Q\ r = \text{construct-witness } Q'\ r$   
**apply** (*unfold construct-witness-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*subgoal-tac Q x = Q' x*)  
**apply** (*simp*)  
**apply** (*drule-tac x=x in fun-cong*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

The set of discovered states is refined by a map from discovered states to their witnesses:

**type-synonym** ('Q,'L) *brw-state* = ('Q  $\rightarrow$  'L tree)  $\times$  'Q set  $\times$  (('Q,'L) ta-rule  $\rightarrow$  nat)

**definition** *brw- $\alpha$*  :: ('Q,'L) *brw-state*  $\Rightarrow$  ('Q,'L) *br'-state*

**where**  $brw-\alpha = (\lambda(Q, W, rcm). (dom\ Q, W, rcm))$

**definition**  $brw-invar-add :: ('Q, 'L)\ ta-rule\ set \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L)\ brw-state\ set$   
**where**  $brw-invar-add\ \delta == \{(Q, W, rcm).\ witness-prop\ \delta\ Q\}$

**definition**  $brw-invar\ \delta == brw-invar-add\ \delta \cap \{s.\ brw-\alpha\ s \in br'-invar\ \delta\}$

**inductive-set**  $brw-step$

$:: ('Q, 'L)\ ta-rule\ set \Rightarrow (('Q, 'L)\ brw-state \times ('Q, 'L)\ brw-state)\ set$   
**for**  $\delta$  **where**

[  
 $q \in W$ ;  
 $dsqr = \{ r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r) \wedge the\ (rcm\ r) \leq 1 \}$ ;  
 $dom\ Q' = dom\ Q \cup lhs\ dsqr$ ;  
 $!!q\ t.\ Q'\ q = Some\ t \Longrightarrow Q\ q = Some\ t$   
 $\vee (\exists r \in dsqr. q = lhs\ r \wedge t = construct-witness\ Q\ r)$ ;  
 $W' = (W - \{q\}) \cup (lhs\ dsqr - dom\ Q)$ ;  
 $!!r.\ r \in \delta \Longrightarrow rcm'\ r = (if\ q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\ then$   
 $\quad Some\ (the\ (rcm\ r) - 1)$   
 $\quad else\ rcm\ r$   
 $)$   
 $]] \Longrightarrow ((Q, W, rcm), (Q', W', rcm')) \in brw-step\ \delta$

**definition**  $brw-cond :: 'Q\ set \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L)\ brw-state\ set$

**where**  $brw-cond\ Qi == \{(Q, W, rcm).\ W \neq \{\}\ \wedge (Qi \cap dom\ Q = \{\})\}$

**inductive-set**  $brw-ig :: ('Q, 'L)\ ta-rule\ set \Rightarrow ('Q \rightarrow 'L\ tree)\ set$   
**for**  $\delta$  **where**

[  
 $\forall q\ t.\ Q\ q = Some\ t \longrightarrow (\exists r \in \delta. rhsq\ r = [] \wedge q = lhs\ r$   
 $\quad \wedge t = NODE\ (rhsl\ r)\ [])$ ;  
 $\forall r \in \delta. rhsq\ r = [] \longrightarrow Q\ (lhs\ r) \neq None$   
 $]] \Longrightarrow Q \in brw-ig\ \delta$

**inductive-set**  $brw-initial :: ('Q, 'L)\ ta-rule\ set \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L)\ brw-state\ set$   
**for**  $\delta$  **where**

[ $!!r.\ r \in \delta \Longrightarrow rcm\ r = Some\ (card\ (set\ (rhsq\ r)))$ ];  $Q \in brw-ig\ \delta$  ]  
 $\Longrightarrow (Q, br-ig\ \delta, rcm) \in brw-initial\ \delta$

**definition**  $brw-algo\ Qi\ \delta == ($

$\quad wa-cond = brw-cond\ Qi,$   
 $\quad wa-step = brw-step\ \delta,$   
 $\quad wa-initial = brw-initial\ \delta,$   
 $\quad wa-invar = brw-invar\ \delta$

)

**lemma**  $brw-cond-abs: \Sigma \in brw-cond\ Qi \longleftrightarrow (brw-\alpha\ \Sigma) \in brw'-cond\ Qi$

```

apply (cases  $\Sigma$ )
apply (simp add: brw-cond-def br'-cond-def brw- $\alpha$ -def)
done

```

```

lemma brw-initial-abs:  $\Sigma \in \text{brw-initial } \delta \implies \text{brw-}\alpha \Sigma \in \text{br'-initial } \delta$ 
apply (cases  $\Sigma$ , simp)
apply (erule brw-initial.cases)
apply (erule brw- $\alpha$ .cases)
apply (auto simp add: brw- $\alpha$ -def)
apply (subgoal-tac dom  $Qa = \text{br-}\alpha \delta$ )
apply simp
apply (rule br'-initial.intros)
apply auto [1]
apply (force simp add: br- $\alpha$ -def)
done

```

```

lemma brw-invar-initial:  $\text{brw-initial } \delta \subseteq \text{brw-invar-add } \delta$ 
apply safe
apply (unfold brw-invar-add-def)
apply (auto simp add: witness-prop-def)
apply (erule brw-initial.cases)
apply (erule brw- $\alpha$ .cases)
apply auto

```

```

proof goal-cases
case prems: (1  $q$   $t$   $rcm$   $Q$ )
from prems(3)[rule-format, OF prems(1)] obtain  $r$  where
  [simp]:  $r \in \delta$     $rhsq$   $r = []$     $q = lhs$   $r$     $t = NODE$  ( $rhsl$   $r$ ) []
by blast
have  $RF[\text{simplified}]$ :  $r = ((lhs$   $r) \rightarrow (rhsl$   $r) (rhsq$   $r))$  by (cases  $r$ ) simp
show ?case
  apply (simp)
  apply (rule accs.intros)
  apply (subst  $RF[\text{symmetric}]$ )
  apply auto
done

```

qed

```

lemma brw-step-abs:
  [  $(\Sigma, \Sigma') \in \text{brw-step } \delta$  ]  $\implies (\text{brw-}\alpha \Sigma, \text{brw-}\alpha \Sigma') \in \text{br'-step } \delta$ 
apply (cases  $\Sigma$ , cases  $\Sigma'$ , simp)
apply (erule brw-step.cases)
apply (simp add: brw- $\alpha$ -def)
apply hypsubst
apply (rule br'-step.intros)
apply assumption
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *brw-step-invar*:  
**assumes** *FIN*[*simp*]: *finite*  $\delta$   
**assumes** *INV*:  $\Sigma \in \text{brw-invar-add } \delta$  **and** *BR'INV*:  $\text{brw-}\alpha \Sigma \in \text{br}'\text{-invar } \delta$   
**assumes** *STEP*:  $(\Sigma, \Sigma') \in \text{brw-step } \delta$   
**shows**  $\Sigma' \in \text{brw-invar-add } \delta$   
**proof** –  
**obtain**  $Q \ W \ \text{rcm} \ Q' \ W' \ \text{rcm}'$  **where**  
[*simp*]:  $\Sigma = (Q, W, \text{rcm}) \quad \Sigma' = (Q', W', \text{rcm}')$   
**by** (*cases*  $\Sigma$ , *cases*  $\Sigma'$ ) *force*  
  
**from** *INV* **have** *WP*: *witness-prop*  $\delta \ Q$   
**by** (*simp-all add: brw-invar-add-def*)  
  
**obtain**  $qw \ \text{dsqr}$  **where** *SPROPS*:  
 $\text{dsqr} = \{r \in \delta. qw \in \text{set}(\text{rhsq } r) \wedge \text{the}(\text{rcm } r) \leq 1\}$   
 $qw \in W$   
 $\text{dom } Q' = \text{dom } Q \cup \text{lhs } ' \ \text{dsqr}$   
 $\text{!!}q \ t. Q' \ q = \text{Some } t \implies Q \ q = \text{Some } t$   
 $\vee (\exists r \in \text{dsqr}. q = \text{lhs } r \wedge t = \text{construct-witness } Q \ r)$   
**by** (*auto intro: brw-step.cases[OF STEP[simplified]]*)  
**from** *br'-rcm-aux'*[*OF BR'INV[unfolded brw- $\alpha$ -def, simplified] SPROPS(2)] **have**  
  
 $\text{DSQR-ALT: } \text{dsqr} = \{r \in \delta. qw \in \text{set}(\text{rhsq } r)$   
 $\quad \wedge \text{set}(\text{rhsq } r) \subseteq \text{dom } Q - (W - \{qw\})\}$   
**by** (*simp add: SPROPS(1)*)  
**have** *witness-prop*  $\delta \ Q'$   
**proof** (*unfold witness-prop-def, safe*)  
**fix**  $q \ t$   
**assume**  $A: Q' \ q = \text{Some } t$   
  
**from** *SPROPS(4)*[*OF A*] **have**  
 $Q \ q = \text{Some } t \vee (\exists r \in \text{dsqr}. q = \text{lhs } r \wedge t = \text{construct-witness } Q \ r)$ .  
**moreover** {  
**assume**  $C: Q \ q = \text{Some } t$   
**from** *witness-propD*[*OF WP, OF C*] **have** *accs*  $\delta \ t \ q$ .  
**}** **moreover** {  
**fix**  $r$   
**assume**  $r \in \text{dsqr}$  **and** [*simp*]:  $q = \text{lhs } r \quad t = \text{construct-witness } Q \ r$   
**from**  $\langle r \in \text{dsqr} \rangle$  **have**  $1: r \in \delta \quad \text{set}(\text{rhsq } r) \subseteq \text{dom } Q$   
**by** (*auto simp add: DSQR-ALT*)  
**from** *construct-witness-correct*[*OF WP 1*] **have** *accs*  $\delta \ t \ q$  **by** *simp*  
**}** **ultimately show** *accs*  $\delta \ t \ q$  **by** *blast*  
**qed**  
**thus** *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: brw-invar-add-def*)  
**qed**  
  
**theorem** *brw-pref-bre'*: *wa-precise-refine* (*brw-algo*  $Q_i \ \delta$ ) (*bre'-algo*  $Q_i \ \delta$ ) *brw- $\alpha$*   
**apply** (*unfold-locales*)  
**apply** (*simp-all add: brw-algo-def bre'-algo-def*)*

**apply** (*auto simp add: brw-cond-abs brw-step-abs brw-initial-abs brw-invar-def*)  
**done**

**interpretation** *brw-pref*:

*wa-precise-refine brw-algo Qi δ bre'-algo Qi δ brw-α*  
**using** *brw-pref-bre'* .

**theorem** *brw-while-algo: finite δ ⇒ while-algo (brw-algo Qi δ)*

**apply** (*rule brw-pref.wa-intro*)  
**apply** (*simp add: bre'-while-algo*)  
**apply** (*simp-all add: brw-algo-def bre'-algo-def*)  
**apply** (*simp add: brw-invar-def*)  
**apply** (*auto intro: brw-step-invar simp add: brw-invar-initial*)  
**done**

**lemma** *fst-brw-α: fst (brw-α s) = dom (fst s)*

**by** (*cases s (simp add: brw-α-def)*)

**theorem** *brw-invar-final*:

$\forall sc. sc \in wa\text{-invar } (brw\text{-algo } Qi \delta) \wedge sc \notin wa\text{-cond } (brw\text{-algo } Qi \delta)$   
 $\longrightarrow (Qi \cap dom (fst sc) = \{\}) = (Qi \cap b\text{-accessible } \delta = \{\})$   
 $\wedge (witness\text{-prop } \delta (fst sc))$

**apply** (*intro conjI allI impI*)

**using** *brw-pref.transfer-correctness[OF bre'-invar-final, unfolded fst-brw-α]*

**apply** *blast*

**apply** (*auto simp add: brw-algo-def brw-invar-def brw-invar-add-def*)

**done**

**Implementing a Step** *inductive-set brw-inner-step*

$:: ('Q, 'L) ta\text{-rule} \Rightarrow (('Q, 'L) brw\text{-state} \times ('Q, 'L) brw\text{-state}) set$

**for** *r* **where**

$\llbracket c = the (rcm r); \Sigma = (Q, W, rcm); \Sigma' = (Q', W', rcm')$

*if*  $c \leq 1 \wedge (lhs r) \notin dom Q$  *then*

$Q' = Q (lhs r \mapsto construct\text{-witness } Q r)$

*else*  $Q' = Q$ ;

*if*  $c \leq 1 \wedge (lhs r) \notin dom Q$  *then*

$W' = insert (lhs r) W$

*else*  $W' = W$ ;

$rcm' = rcm ( r \mapsto (c - (1 :: nat)))$

$\rrbracket \Rightarrow (\Sigma, \Sigma') \in brw\text{-inner-step } r$

**definition** *brw-inner-invar*

$:: ('Q, 'L) ta\text{-rule } set \Rightarrow 'Q \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) brw\text{-state} \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) ta\text{-rule } set$

$\Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) brw\text{-state} \Rightarrow bool$

**where**

*brw-inner-invar rules*  $q == \lambda(Q, W, rcm) it (Q', W', rcm')$ .

*(br'-inner-invar rules*  $q (brw\text{-}\alpha (Q, W, rcm)) it (brw\text{-}\alpha (Q', W', rcm')) \wedge$

$(Q' \upharpoonright dom Q = Q) \wedge$

*(let*  $dsqr = \{ r \in rules - it. the (rcm r) \leq 1 \}$  *in*



$(\forall q t. Q' q = \text{Some } t \longrightarrow (Q q = \text{Some } t$   
 $\vee (Q q = \text{None} \wedge (\exists r \in \text{dsqr}. q = \text{lhs } r \wedge t = \text{construct-witness } Q r))$   
 $)$   
 $)))$

**lemma** *brw-inner-step-abs:*

$(\Sigma, \Sigma') \in \text{brw-inner-step } r \implies \text{br}'\text{-inner-step } r (\text{brw-}\alpha \Sigma) = \text{brw-}\alpha \Sigma'$   
**apply** (*erule brw-inner-step.cases*)  
**apply** (*unfold br}'-inner-step-def brw-}\alpha-def Let-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *brw-inner-invar-imp-final:*

$\llbracket q \in W; \text{brw-inner-invar } \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r)\} q (Q, W - \{q\}, \text{rcm}) \{\} \Sigma' \rrbracket$   
 $\implies ((Q, W, \text{rcm}), \Sigma') \in \text{brw-step } \delta$   
**apply** (*unfold brw-inner-invar-def br}'-inner-invar-def brw-}\alpha-def*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: Let-def*)  
**apply** (*rule brw-step.intros*)  
**apply** *assumption*  
**apply** (*rule refl*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *brw-inner-invar-step:*

**assumes** *INVI*:  $(Q, W, \text{rcm}) \in \text{brw-invar } \delta$   
**assumes** *A*:  $q \in W \quad r \in \text{it} \quad \text{it} \subseteq \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r)\}$   
**assumes** *INVH*:  $\text{brw-inner-invar } \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r)\} q (Q, W - \{q\}, \text{rcm}) \text{it } \Sigma h$   
**assumes** *STEP*:  $(\Sigma h, \Sigma') \in \text{brw-inner-step } r$   
**shows**  $\text{brw-inner-invar } \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r)\} q (Q, W - \{q\}, \text{rcm}) (\text{it} - \{r\}) \Sigma'$   
**proof** –  
**from** *INVI* **have** *BR}'-INV*:  $(\text{dom } Q, W, \text{rcm}) \in \text{br}'\text{-invar } \delta$   
**by** (*simp add: brw-invar-def brw-}\alpha-def*)

**obtain** *c Qh Wh rcmh Q' W' rcm'* **where**

*SIGMAF*[*simp*]:  $\Sigma h = (Qh, Wh, rcmh) \quad \Sigma' = (Q', W', rcm')$  **and**

*CF*[*simp*]:  $c = \text{the } (\text{rcmh } r)$  **and**

*SF*: *if*  $c \leq 1 \wedge (\text{lhs } r) \notin \text{dom } Qh$  *then*

$Q' = Qh(\text{lhs } r \mapsto (\text{construct-witness } Qh r))$

*else*  $Q' = Qh$

*if*  $c \leq 1 \wedge (\text{lhs } r) \notin \text{dom } Qh$  *then*

$W' = \text{insert } (\text{lhs } r) Wh$

*else*  $W' = Wh$

$\text{rcm}' = \text{rcmh } (r \mapsto (c - (1::\text{nat})))$

**by** (*blast intro: brw-inner-step.cases[OF STEP]*)

```

let ?rules = {r∈δ. q∈set (rhsq r)}
let ?dsqr = λit. { r∈?rules - it. the (rcm r) ≤ 1 }
from INVH have INVHF:
  br'-inner-invar ?rules q (dom Q, W-{q}, rcm) (it) (dom Qh, Wh, rcmh)
  Qh|'dom Q = Q
  (∀ q t. Qh q = Some t → (Q q = Some t
    ∨ (Q q = None ∧ (∃ r∈?dsqr it. q=lhs r ∧ t=construct-witness Q r))
  )
)
by (auto simp add: brw-inner-invar-def Let-def brw-α-def)
from INVHF(1)[unfolded br'-inner-invar-def] have INV'HF:
  dom Qh = dom Q ∪ lhs'?dsqr it
  (∀ r. rcmh r = (if r ∈ ?rules - it then
    Some (the (rcm r) - 1)
    else rcm r))

by auto
from brw-inner-step-abs[OF STEP]
  br'-inner-invar-step[OF A(1) INVHF(1) A(2,3)] have
  G1: br'-inner-invar ?rules q (dom Q, W-{q}, rcm) (it-{r}) (dom Q', W', rcm')
by (simp add: brw-α-def)
moreover have
  (∀ q t. Q' q = Some t → (Q q = Some t
    ∨ ( Q q = None
      ∧ (∃ r∈?dsqr (it-{r}). q=lhs r ∧ t=construct-witness Q r)
    )
  )
) (is ?G1)

  Q'|'dom Q = Q (is ?G2)
proof -
  {
    assume C: ¬ c≤1 ∨ lhs r ∈ dom Qh
    with SF have Q'=Qh by auto
    with INVHF(2,3) have ?G1 ?G2 by auto
  } moreover {
    assume C: c≤1 lhs r ∉ dom Qh
    with SF have Q'F: Q'=Qh(lhs r ↦ (construct-witness Qh r)) by auto
    from C(2) INVHF(2) INV'HF(1) have G2: ?G2 by (auto simp add: Q'F)
    from C(1) INV'HF A have
      RI: r∈?dsqr (it-{r}) and
      DSS: dom Q ⊆ dom Qh
    by (auto)
    from br'-rcm-aux'[OF BR'-INV A(1)] RI have
      RDQ: set (rhsq r) ⊆ dom Q
    by auto
    with INVHF(2) have Qh |' set (rhsq r) = Q |' set (rhsq r)
    by (blast intro: restrict-map-subset-eq)
    hence [simp]: construct-witness Qh r = construct-witness Q r
    by (blast dest: construct-witness-eq)
  }

```

```

from DSS C(2) have [simp]:  $Q (lhs\ r) = None \quad Qh (lhs\ r) = None$  by auto
have G1: ?G1
proof (intro allI impI, goal-cases)
  case prems: (1 q t)
  {
    assume [simp]:  $q = lhs\ r$ 
    from prems Q'F have [simp]:  $t = (construct-witness\ Qh\ r)$  by simp
    from RI have ?case by auto
  } moreover {
    assume  $q \neq lhs\ r$ 
    with Q'F prems have  $Qh\ q = Some\ t$  by auto
    with INVHF(3) have ?case by auto
  } ultimately show ?case by blast
qed
note G1 G2
} ultimately show ?G1 ?G2 by blast+
qed
ultimately show ?thesis
by (unfold brw-inner-invar-def Let-def brw- $\alpha$ -def) auto
qed

```

**lemma** *brw-inner-invar-initial*:

```

 $\llbracket q \in W \rrbracket \implies brw\text{-inner-invar } \{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\} q\ (Q, W - \{q\}, rcm)$ 
 $\{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\} (Q, W - \{q\}, rcm)$ 
by (simp add: brw-inner-invar-def br'-inner-invar-initial brw- $\alpha$ -def)

```

**theorem** *brw-inner-step-proof*:

```

fixes  $\alpha s :: 'S \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L)\ brw\text{-state}$ 
fixes cstep ::  $('Q, 'L)\ ta\text{-rule} \Rightarrow 'S \Rightarrow 'S$ 
fixes  $\Sigma h :: 'S$ 
fixes cinvar ::  $('Q, 'L)\ ta\text{-rule set} \Rightarrow 'S \Rightarrow bool$ 

```

**assumes** *set-iterate*: *set-iteratei*  $\alpha$  *invar iteratei*

**assumes** *invar-start*:  $(\alpha s\ \Sigma) \in brw\text{-invar } \delta$

**assumes** *invar-initial*: *cinvar*  $\{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\} \Sigma h$

**assumes** *invar-step*:

```

!!it r  $\Sigma. \llbracket r \in it; it \subseteq \{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}; cinvar\ it\ \Sigma \rrbracket$ 
 $\implies cinvar\ (it - \{r\})\ (cstep\ r\ \Sigma)$ 

```

**assumes** *step-desc*:

```

!!it r  $\Sigma. \llbracket r \in it; it \subseteq \{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}; cinvar\ it\ \Sigma \rrbracket$ 
 $\implies (\alpha s\ \Sigma, \alpha s\ (cstep\ r\ \Sigma)) \in brw\text{-inner-step } r$ 

```

**assumes** *it-set-desc*: *invar it-set*  $\alpha$  *it-set* =  $\{r \in \delta. q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}$

**assumes** *QIW[*simp*]*:  $q \in W$

**assumes**  $\Sigma\text{-desc}[*simp*]$ :  $\alpha s\ \Sigma = (Q, W, rcm)$

**assumes**  $\Sigma h\text{-desc}[*simp*]$ :  $\alpha s\ \Sigma h = (Q, W - \{q\}, rcm)$

**shows**  $(\alpha s \Sigma, \alpha s (\text{iteratei } \text{it-set } (\lambda-. \text{True}) \text{ cstep } \Sigma h)) \in \text{brw-step } \delta$   
**proof** –  
**interpret** *set-iteratei*  $\alpha$  *invar* *iteratei* **by fact**

**show** *?thesis*  
**apply** (*rule-tac*  
 $I = \lambda \text{it } \Sigma. \text{cinvar } \text{it } \Sigma \wedge \text{brw-inner-invar } \{r \in \delta. q \in \text{set } (\text{rhsq } r)\} q$   
 $(Q, W - \{q\}, \text{rcm}) \text{it } (\alpha s \Sigma)$   
**in** *iterate-rule-P*)  
**apply** (*auto*  
*simp add: it-set-desc invar-initial brw-inner-invar-initial invar-step*  
*step-desc brw-inner-invar-step[OF invar-start[simplified]]*  
*brw-inner-invar-imp-final[OF QIW]*)  
**done**  
**qed**

### 4.3 Product Automaton

The forward-reduced product automaton can be described as a state-space exploration problem.

In this section, the DFS-algorithm for state-space exploration (cf. Theory *Collections-Examples.Exploration* in the Isabelle Collections Framework) is refined to compute the product automaton.

**type-synonym**  $(\text{'Q1}, \text{'Q2}, \text{'L}) \text{frp-state} =$   
 $(\text{'Q1} \times \text{'Q2}) \text{set} \times (\text{'Q1} \times \text{'Q2}) \text{list} \times ((\text{'Q1} \times \text{'Q2}), \text{'L}) \text{ta-rule set}$

**definition**  $\text{frp-}\alpha :: (\text{'Q1}, \text{'Q2}, \text{'L}) \text{frp-state} \Rightarrow (\text{'Q1} \times \text{'Q2}) \text{dfs-state}$   
**where**  $\text{frp-}\alpha S == \text{let } (Q, W, \delta) = S \text{ in } (Q, W)$

**definition**  $\text{frp-invar-add } \delta 1 \delta 2 ==$   
 $\{ (Q, W, \delta d). \delta d = \{ r. r \in \delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \delta 2 \wedge \text{lhs } r \in Q - \text{set } W \} \}$

**definition**  $\text{frp-invar}$   
 $:: (\text{'Q1}, \text{'L}) \text{tree-automaton-rec} \Rightarrow (\text{'Q2}, \text{'L}) \text{tree-automaton-rec}$   
 $\Rightarrow (\text{'Q1}, \text{'Q2}, \text{'L}) \text{frp-state set}$   
**where**  $\text{frp-invar } T1 T2 ==$   
 $\text{frp-invar-add } (\text{ta-rules } T1) (\text{ta-rules } T2)$   
 $\cap \{ s. \text{frp-}\alpha s \in \text{dfs-invar } (\text{ta-initial } T1 \times \text{ta-initial } T2)$   
 $(\text{f-succ } (\delta\text{-prod } (\text{ta-rules } T1) (\text{ta-rules } T2))) \}$

**inductive-set**  $\text{frp-step}$   
 $:: (\text{'Q1}, \text{'L}) \text{ta-rule set} \Rightarrow (\text{'Q2}, \text{'L}) \text{ta-rule set}$   
 $\Rightarrow ((\text{'Q1}, \text{'Q2}, \text{'L}) \text{frp-state} \times (\text{'Q1}, \text{'Q2}, \text{'L}) \text{frp-state}) \text{set}$   
**for**  $\delta 1 \delta 2$  **where**  
 $\llbracket W = (q1, q2) \# Wtl;$   
 $\text{distinct } Wn;$   
 $\text{set } Wn = \text{f-succ } (\delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \delta 2) \text{ `` } \{(q1, q2)\} - Q;$

$W' = W_n @ Wtl;$   
 $Q' = Q \cup f\text{-succ } (\delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \delta 2) \text{ `` } \{(q1, q2)\};$   
 $\delta d' = \delta d \cup \{r \in \delta\text{-prod } \delta 1 \delta 2. \text{ lhs } r = (q1, q2)\}$   
 $\] \implies ((Q, W, \delta d), (Q', W', \delta d')) \in \text{frp-step } \delta 1 \delta 2$

**inductive-set** *frp-initial* :: '*Q1 set*  $\Rightarrow$  '*Q2 set*  $\Rightarrow$  ('*Q1, 'Q2, 'L*) *frp-state set*  
**for** *Q10 Q20* **where**  
 $\[ \text{distinct } W; \text{ set } W = Q10 \times Q20 \] \implies (Q10 \times Q20, W, \{\}) \in \text{frp-initial } Q10 Q20$

**definition** *frp-cond* :: ('*Q1, 'Q2, 'L*) *frp-state set* **where**  
*frp-cond* ==  $\{(Q, W, \delta d). W \neq \{\}\}$

**definition** *frp-algo* *T1 T2* == (  
*wa-cond* = *frp-cond*,  
*wa-step* = *frp-step* (*ta-rules T1*) (*ta-rules T2*),  
*wa-initial* = *frp-initial* (*ta-initial T1*) (*ta-initial T2*),  
*wa-invar* = *frp-invar T1 T2*  
 $\})$

— The algorithm refines the DFS-algorithm

**theorem** *frp-pref-dfs*:  
*wa-precise-refine* (*frp-algo T1 T2*)  
 $(\text{dfs-algo } (\text{ta-initial } T1 \times \text{ta-initial } T2)$   
 $(f\text{-succ } (\delta\text{-prod } (\text{ta-rules } T1) (\text{ta-rules } T2))))$   
*frp- $\alpha$*   
**apply** *unfold-locales*  
**apply** (*auto simp add: frp-algo-def frp- $\alpha$ -def frp-cond-def dfs-algo-def*  
*dfs-cond-def frp-invar-def*  
*elim!: frp-step.cases frp-initial.cases*  
*intro: dfs-step.intros dfs-initial.intros*  
 $\)$   
**done**

**interpretation** *frp-ref*: *wa-precise-refine* (*frp-algo T1 T2*)  
 $(\text{dfs-algo } (\text{ta-initial } T1 \times \text{ta-initial } T2)$   
 $(f\text{-succ } (\delta\text{-prod } (\text{ta-rules } T1) (\text{ta-rules } T2))))$   
*frp- $\alpha$*  **using** *frp-pref-dfs* .

— The algorithm is a well-defined while-algorithm

**theorem** *frp-while-algo*:  
**assumes** *TA: tree-automaton T1*  
*tree-automaton T2*  
**shows** *while-algo* (*frp-algo T1 T2*)  
**proof** —  
**interpret** *t1: tree-automaton T1* **by fact**  
**interpret** *t2: tree-automaton T2* **by fact**

**have** *finite*: *finite*  $((f\text{-succ } (\delta\text{-prod } (\text{ta-rules } T1) (\text{ta-rules } T2))))^*$   
 $\text{`` } (\text{ta-initial } T1 \times \text{ta-initial } T2)$

```

proof –
  have ((f-succ ( $\delta$ -prod (ta-rules T1) (ta-rules T2)))*)
    “ (ta-initial T1  $\times$  ta-initial T2) )
     $\subseteq$  ((ta-initial T1  $\times$  ta-initial T2)
       $\cup$   $\delta$ -states ( $\delta$ -prod (ta-rules T1) (ta-rules T2)))
  apply rule
  apply (drule f-accessible-subset[unfolded f-accessible-def])
  apply auto
  done
moreover have finite ...
  by auto
ultimately show ?thesis by (simp add: finite-subset)
qed

show ?thesis
  apply (rule frp-ref.wa-intro)
  apply (rule dfs-while-algo[OF finite])
  apply (simp add: frp-algo-def dfs-algo-def frp-invar-def)
  apply (auto simp add: dfs-algo-def frp-algo-def frp- $\alpha$ -def
    dfs- $\alpha$ -def frp-invar-add-def dfs-invar-def
    dfs-invar-add-def sse-invar-def
    elim!: frp-step.cases) [1]
  apply (force simp add: frp-algo-def frp-invar-add-def
    elim!: frp-initial.cases)
  done
qed

```

— If the algorithm terminates, the forward reduced product automaton can be constructed from the result

**theorem** *frp-inv-final*:

$\forall s. s \in \text{wa-invar} (\text{frp-algo } T1 \ T2) \wedge s \notin \text{wa-cond} (\text{frp-algo } T1 \ T2)$

$\longrightarrow$  (*case* *s* *of* (*Q, W,  $\delta d$* )  $\Rightarrow$

( $\mid$  *ta-initial* = *ta-initial* *T1*  $\times$  *ta-initial* *T2*,

*ta-rules* =  $\delta d$

$\mid$ ) = *ta-fwd-reduce* (*ta-prod* *T1* *T2*))

**apply** (*intro allI impI*)

**apply** (*case-tac s*)

**apply** *simp*

**apply** (*simp add: ta-reduce-def ta-prod-def frp-algo-def*)

**proof** –

**fix** *Q W  $\delta d$*

**assume** *A*: (*Q, W,  $\delta d$* )  $\in$  *frp-invar* *T1* *T2*  $\wedge$  (*Q, W,  $\delta d$* )  $\notin$  *frp-cond*

**from** *frp-ref.transfer-correctness*[*OF dfs-invar-final*,  
*unfolded frp-algo-def, simplified*,  
*rule-format, OF A*]

**have** [*simp*]: *Q* = *f-accessible* ( $\delta$ -*prod* (*ta-rules* *T1*) (*ta-rules* *T2*))

```

      (ta-initial T1 × ta-initial T2)
    by (simp add: f-accessible-def dfs-α-def frp-α-def)

from A show δd = reduce-rules
  (δ-prod (ta-rules T1) (ta-rules T2))
  (f-accessible (δ-prod (ta-rules T1) (ta-rules T2))
    (ta-initial T1 × ta-initial T2))
apply (auto simp add: reduce-rules-def f-accessible-def frp-invar-def
  frp-invar-add-def frp-α-def frp-cond-def)
apply (case-tac x)
apply (auto dest: rtrancl-into-rtrancl intro: f-succ.intros)
done
qed

end

```

## 5 Executable Implementation of Tree Automata

```

theory Ta-impl
imports
  Main
  Collections.CollectionsV1
  Ta AbsAlgo
  HOL-Library.Code-Target-Numeral
begin

```

In this theory, an efficient executable implementation of non-deterministic tree automata and basic algorithms is defined.

The algorithms use red-black trees to represent sets of states or rules where appropriate.

### 5.1 Prelude

```

instantiation ta-rule :: (hashable,hashable) hashable
begin
fun hashcode-of-ta-rule
  :: ('Q1::hashable,'Q2::hashable) ta-rule ⇒ hashcode
  where
    hashcode-of-ta-rule (q → f qs) = hashcode q + hashcode f + hashcode qs
definition [simp]: hashcode = hashcode-of-ta-rule

definition def-hashmap-size::(('a,'b) ta-rule itself ⇒ nat) == (λ-. 32)

instance
  by (intro-classes)(auto simp add: def-hashmap-size-ta-rule-def)
end

```

— Make wrapped states hashable

**instantiation** *ustate-wrapper* :: (*hashable,hashable*) *hashable*

**begin**

**definition** *hashcode* *x* == (*case* *x* of *USW1* *a* ⇒ 2 \* *hashcode* *a* | *USW2* *b* ⇒ 2 \* *hashcode* *b* + 1)

**definition** *def-hashmap-size* = ( $\lambda$ - :: (('a,'b) *ustate-wrapper*) *itself*. *def-hashmap-size* *TYPE*('a) + *def-hashmap-size* *TYPE*('b))

**instance using** *def-hashmap-size*[**where** ?'a='a] *def-hashmap-size*[**where** ?'a='b]

**by**(*intro-classes*)(*simp-all* *add*: *bounded-hashcode-bounds* *def-hashmap-size-ustate-wrapper-def* *split*: *ustate-wrapper.split*)

**end**

### 5.1.1 Ad-Hoc instantiations of generic Algorithms

**setup** *Locale-Code.open-block*

**interpretation** *hll-idx*: *build-index-loc* *hm-ops* *ls-ops* *ls-ops* **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *ll-set-xy*: *g-set-xy-loc* *ls-ops* *ls-ops*  
  **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *lh-set-xx*: *g-set-xx-loc* *ls-ops* *hs-ops*  
  **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *lll-iftt-cp*: *inj-image-filter-cp-loc* *ls-ops* *ls-ops* *ls-ops*  
  **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *hhh-cart*: *cart-loc* *hs-ops* *hs-ops* *hs-ops* **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *hh-set-xy*: *g-set-xy-loc* *hs-ops* *hs-ops*  
  **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *llh-set-xyy*: *g-set-xyy-loc* *ls-ops* *ls-ops* *hs-ops*  
  **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *hh-map-to-nat*: *map-to-nat-loc* *hs-ops* *hm-ops* **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *hh-set-xy*: *g-set-xy-loc* *hs-ops* *hs-ops* **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *lh-set-xy*: *g-set-xy-loc* *ls-ops* *hs-ops* **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *hh-set-xx*: *g-set-xx-loc* *hs-ops* *hs-ops* **by** *unfold-locales*

**interpretation** *hs-to-fifo*: *set-to-list-loc* *hs-ops* *fifo-ops* **by** *unfold-locales*

**setup** *Locale-Code.close-block*

## 5.2 Generating Indices of Rules

Rule indices are pieces of extra information that may be attached to a tree automaton. There are three possible rule indices

**f** index of rules by function symbol

**s** index of rules by lhs



**sf** index of rules

**definition** *build-rule-index*  
:: (('q,'l) ta-rule  $\Rightarrow$  'i::hashable)  $\Rightarrow$  ('q,'l) ta-rule ls  
   $\Rightarrow$  ('i,('q,'l) ta-rule ls) hm  
**where** *build-rule-index* == *hll-idx.idx-build*

**definition** *build-rule-index-f*  $\delta$  == *build-rule-index* ( $\lambda r.$  *rhsl* r)  $\delta$

**definition** *build-rule-index-s*  $\delta$  == *build-rule-index* ( $\lambda r.$  *lhs* r)  $\delta$

**definition** *build-rule-index-sf*  $\delta$  == *build-rule-index* ( $\lambda r.$  (*lhs* r, *rhsl* r))  $\delta$

**lemma** *build-rule-index-f-correct*[*simp*]:  
  **assumes** *I*[*simp*, *intro!*]: *ls-invar*  $\delta$   
  **shows** *hll-idx.is-index* *rhsl* (*ls- $\alpha$*   $\delta$ ) (*build-rule-index-f*  $\delta$ )  
  **apply** (*unfold build-rule-index-f-def build-rule-index-def*)  
  **apply** (*simp add: hll-idx.idx-build-is-index*)  
  **done**

**lemma** *build-rule-index-s-correct*[*simp*]:  
  **assumes** *I*[*simp*, *intro!*]: *ls-invar*  $\delta$   
  **shows**  
  *hll-idx.is-index* *lhs* (*ls- $\alpha$*   $\delta$ ) (*build-rule-index-s*  $\delta$ )  
  **by** (*unfold build-rule-index-s-def build-rule-index-def*)  
  (*simp add: hll-idx.idx-build-is-index*)

**lemma** *build-rule-index-sf-correct*[*simp*]:  
  **assumes** *I*[*simp*, *intro!*]: *ls-invar*  $\delta$   
  **shows**  
  *hll-idx.is-index* ( $\lambda r.$  (*lhs* r, *rhsl* r)) (*ls- $\alpha$*   $\delta$ ) (*build-rule-index-sf*  $\delta$ )  
  **by** (*unfold build-rule-index-sf-def build-rule-index-def*)  
  (*simp add: hll-idx.idx-build-is-index*)

### 5.3 Tree Automaton with Optional Indices

A tree automaton contains a hashset of initial states, a list-set of rules and several (optional) rule indices.

**record** (**overloaded**) ('q,'l) *hashedTa* =  
  — Initial states  
  *hta-Qi* :: 'q *hs*  
  — Rules  
  *hta- $\delta$*  :: ('q,'l) ta-rule *ls*  
  — Rules by function symbol  
  *hta-idx-f* :: ('l,('q,'l) ta-rule *ls*) *hm option*  
  — Rules by lhs state  
  *hta-idx-s* :: ('q,('q,'l) ta-rule *ls*) *hm option*  
  — Rules by lhs state and function symbol  
  *hta-idx-sf* :: ('q $\times$ 'l,('q,'l) ta-rule *ls*) *hm option*

— Abstraction of a concrete tree automaton to an abstract one

**definition** *hta- $\alpha$*

**where**  $hta-\alpha\ H = \langle ta-initial = hs-\alpha\ (hta-Qi\ H), ta-rules = ls-\alpha\ (hta-\delta\ H) \rangle$

— Builds the f-index if not present

**definition** *hta-ensure-idx-f*  $H ==$

*case* *hta-idx-f*  $H$  of

*None*  $\Rightarrow H \langle hta-idx-f := Some\ (build-rule-index-f\ (hta-\delta\ H)) \rangle$  |

*Some*  $- \Rightarrow H$

— Builds the s-index if not present

**definition** *hta-ensure-idx-s*  $H ==$

*case* *hta-idx-s*  $H$  of

*None*  $\Rightarrow H \langle hta-idx-s := Some\ (build-rule-index-s\ (hta-\delta\ H)) \rangle$  |

*Some*  $- \Rightarrow H$

— Builds the sf-index if not present

**definition** *hta-ensure-idx-sf*  $H ==$

*case* *hta-idx-sf*  $H$  of

*None*  $\Rightarrow H \langle hta-idx-sf := Some\ (build-rule-index-sf\ (hta-\delta\ H)) \rangle$  |

*Some*  $- \Rightarrow H$

**lemma** *hta-ensure-idx-f-correct- $\alpha$ [simp]*:

$hta-\alpha\ (hta-ensure-idx-f\ H) = hta-\alpha\ H$

**by** (*simp* *add: hta-ensure-idx-f-def* *hta- $\alpha$ -def* *split: option.split*)

**lemma** *hta-ensure-idx-s-correct- $\alpha$ [simp]*:

$hta-\alpha\ (hta-ensure-idx-s\ H) = hta-\alpha\ H$

**by** (*simp* *add: hta-ensure-idx-s-def* *hta- $\alpha$ -def* *split: option.split*)

**lemma** *hta-ensure-idx-sf-correct- $\alpha$ [simp]*:

$hta-\alpha\ (hta-ensure-idx-sf\ H) = hta-\alpha\ H$

**by** (*simp* *add: hta-ensure-idx-sf-def* *hta- $\alpha$ -def* *split: option.split*)

**lemma** *hta-ensure-idx-other[simp]*:

$hta-Qi\ (hta-ensure-idx-f\ H) = hta-Qi\ H$

$hta-\delta\ (hta-ensure-idx-f\ H) = hta-\delta\ H$

$hta-Qi\ (hta-ensure-idx-s\ H) = hta-Qi\ H$

$hta-\delta\ (hta-ensure-idx-s\ H) = hta-\delta\ H$

$hta-Qi\ (hta-ensure-idx-sf\ H) = hta-Qi\ H$

$hta-\delta\ (hta-ensure-idx-sf\ H) = hta-\delta\ H$

**by** (*auto*

*simp* *add: hta-ensure-idx-f-def* *hta-ensure-idx-s-def* *hta-ensure-idx-sf-def* *split: option.split*)

— Check whether the f-index is present

**definition** *hta-has-idx-f*  $H == hta-idx-f\ H \neq None$

— Check whether the s-index is present

**definition**  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H == hta\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H \neq None$

— Check whether the sf-index is present

**definition**  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H == hta\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H \neq None$

**lemma**  $hta\text{-}idx\text{-}f\text{-}pres$

[*simp, intro!*]:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ (hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ H)$  **and**  
 [*simp, intro*]:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H \implies hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ (hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ H)$  **and**  
 [*simp, intro*]:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H \implies hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ (hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ H)$   
**by** (*simp-all*  
*add*:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}f\text{-}def\ hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\text{-}def\ hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\text{-}def$   
 $hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}f\text{-}def$   
*split*: *option.split*)

**lemma**  $hta\text{-}idx\text{-}s\text{-}pres$

[*simp, intro!*]:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ (hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H)$  **and**  
 [*simp, intro*]:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ H \implies hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ (hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H)$  **and**  
 [*simp, intro*]:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H \implies hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ (hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H)$   
**by** (*simp-all*  
*add*:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}f\text{-}def\ hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\text{-}def\ hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\text{-}def$   
 $hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}s\text{-}def$   
*split*: *option.split*)

**lemma**  $hta\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\text{-}pres$

[*simp, intro!*]:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ (hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H)$  **and**  
 [*simp, intro*]:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ H \implies hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ (hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H)$  **and**  
 [*simp, intro*]:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H \implies hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ (hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H)$   
**by** (*simp-all*  
*add*:  $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}f\text{-}def\ hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\text{-}def\ hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\text{-}def$   
 $hta\text{-}ensure\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\text{-}def$   
*split*: *option.split*)

The lookup functions are only defined if the required index is present. This enforces generation of the index before applying lookup functions.

**definition**  $hta\text{-}lookup\text{-}f\ f\ H == hll\text{-}idx.lookup\ f\ (the\ (hta\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ H))$

— Lookup rules by lhs-state

**definition**  $hta\text{-}lookup\text{-}s\ q\ H == hll\text{-}idx.lookup\ q\ (the\ (hta\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H))$

— Lookup rules by function symbol and lhs-state

**definition**  $hta\text{-}lookup\text{-}sf\ q\ f\ H == hll\text{-}idx.lookup\ (q,f)\ (the\ (hta\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H))$

— This locale defines the invariants of a tree automaton

**locale**  $hashedTa =$

**fixes**  $H :: ('Q::hashable, 'L::hashable)\ hashedTa$

— The involved sets satisfy their invariants

**assumes**  $invar[*simp, intro!*]:$

$hs\text{-}invar\ (hta\text{-}Qi\ H)$

$ls\text{-}invar\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H)$

— The indices are correct, if present

**assumes** *index-correct*:

$hta\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ H = \text{Some } idx\text{-}f$   
 $\implies hll\text{-}idx.\text{is-index } rhsl\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H))\ idx\text{-}f$   
 $hta\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H = \text{Some } idx\text{-}s$   
 $\implies hll\text{-}idx.\text{is-index } lhs\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H))\ idx\text{-}s$   
 $hta\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H = \text{Some } idx\text{-}sf$   
 $\implies hll\text{-}idx.\text{is-index } (\lambda r. (lhs\ r, rhsl\ r))\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H))\ idx\text{-}sf$

**begin**

— Inside this locale, some shorthand notations for the sets of rules and initial states are used

**abbreviation**  $\delta == hta\text{-}\delta\ H$

**abbreviation**  $Qi == hta\text{-}Qi\ H$

— The lookup-xxx operations are correct

**lemma** *hta-lookup-f-correct*:

$hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ H \implies ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}lookup\text{-}f\ f\ H) = \{r \in ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta . rhsl\ r = f\}$   
 $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}f\ H \implies ls\text{-}invar\ (hta\text{-}lookup\text{-}f\ f\ H)$   
**apply** (*cases* *hta-has-idx-f* *H*)  
**apply** (*unfold* *hta-has-idx-f-def* *hta-lookup-f-def*)  
**apply** (*auto*)  
*simp* *add*: *hll-idx.lookup-correct*[*OF index-correct*(1)]  
*index-def*)

**done**

**lemma** *hta-lookup-s-correct*:

$hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H \implies ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}lookup\text{-}s\ q\ H) = \{r \in ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta . lhs\ r = q\}$   
 $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}s\ H \implies ls\text{-}invar\ (hta\text{-}lookup\text{-}s\ q\ H)$   
**apply** (*cases* *hta-has-idx-s* *H*)  
**apply** (*unfold* *hta-has-idx-s-def* *hta-lookup-s-def*)  
**apply** (*auto*)  
*simp* *add*: *hll-idx.lookup-correct*[*OF index-correct*(2)]  
*index-def*)

**done**

**lemma** *hta-lookup-sf-correct*:

$hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H$   
 $\implies ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}lookup\text{-}sf\ q\ f\ H) = \{r \in ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta . lhs\ r = q \wedge rhsl\ r = f\}$   
 $hta\text{-}has\text{-}idx\text{-}sf\ H \implies ls\text{-}invar\ (hta\text{-}lookup\text{-}sf\ q\ f\ H)$   
**apply** (*cases* *hta-has-idx-sf* *H*)  
**apply** (*unfold* *hta-has-idx-sf-def* *hta-lookup-sf-def*)  
**apply** (*auto*)  
*simp* *add*: *hll-idx.lookup-correct*[*OF index-correct*(3)]  
*index-def*)

**done**

— The ensure-index operations preserve the invariants

```

lemma hta-ensure-idx-f-correct[simp, intro!]: hashedTa (hta-ensure-idx-f H)
  apply (unfold-locales)
  apply (auto)
  apply (auto)
  simp add: hta-ensure-idx-f-def hta-ensure-idx-s-def hta-ensure-idx-sf-def
    index-correct
  split: option.split-asm)
done

```

```

lemma hta-ensure-idx-s-correct[simp, intro!]: hashedTa (hta-ensure-idx-s H)
  apply (unfold-locales)
  apply (auto)
  apply (auto)
  simp add: hta-ensure-idx-f-def hta-ensure-idx-s-def hta-ensure-idx-sf-def
    index-correct
  split: option.split-asm)
done

```

```

lemma hta-ensure-idx-sf-correct[simp, intro!]: hashedTa (hta-ensure-idx-sf H)
  apply (unfold-locales)
  apply (auto)
  apply (auto)
  simp add: hta-ensure-idx-f-def hta-ensure-idx-s-def hta-ensure-idx-sf-def
    index-correct
  split: option.split-asm)
done

```

The abstract tree automaton satisfies the invariants for an abstract tree automaton

```

lemma hta- $\alpha$ -is-ta[simp, intro!]: tree-automaton (hta- $\alpha$  H)
  apply unfold-locales
  apply (unfold hta- $\alpha$ -def)
  apply auto
done

```

**end**

— Add some lemmas to *simpset* – also outside the locale

```

lemmas [simp, intro] =
  hashedTa.hta-ensure-idx-f-correct
  hashedTa.hta-ensure-idx-s-correct
  hashedTa.hta-ensure-idx-sf-correct

```

— Build a tree automaton from a set of initial states and a set of rules

```

definition init-hta Qi  $\delta$  ==
  ( $\lambda$  hta-Qi = Qi,
   hta- $\delta$  =  $\delta$ ,
   hta-idx-f = None,
   hta-idx-s = None,

```

*hta-idx-sf* = None  
 )

— Building a tree automaton from a valid tree automaton yields again a valid tree automaton. This operation has the only effect of removing the indices.

**lemma** (in *hashedTa*) *init-hta-is-hta*:  
*hashedTa* (*init-hta* (*hta-Qi* *H*) (*hta-δ* *H*))  
**apply** (*unfold-locales*)  
**apply** (*unfold init-hta-def*)  
**apply** (*auto*)  
**done**

## 5.4 Algorithm for the Word Problem

**lemma** *r-match-by-laz*: *r-match* *L l* = *list-all-zip* ( $\lambda Q q. q \in Q$ ) *L l*  
**by** (*unfold r-match-alt list-all-zip-alt*)  
*auto*

Executable function that computes the set of accepting states for a given tree

**fun** *faccs'* **where**  
*faccs' H* (*NODE f ts*) = (  
 let *Qs* = *List.map* (*faccs' H*) *ts* in  
*ll-set-xy.g-image-filter* ( $\lambda r. \text{case } r \text{ of } (q \rightarrow f' qs) \Rightarrow$   
   *if list-all-zip* ( $\lambda Q q. \text{ls-memb } q Q$ ) *Qs qs* then *Some* (*lhs r*) else *None*  
 )  
 (*hta-lookup-f f H*)  
 )

— Executable algorithm to decide the word-problem. The first version depends on the f-index to be present, the second version computes the index if not present.

**definition** *hta-mem' t H* ==  $\neg \text{lh-set-xx.g-disjoint}$  (*faccs' H t*) (*hta-Qi H*)

**definition** *hta-mem t H* == *hta-mem' t* (*hta-ensure-idx-f H*)

**context** *hashedTa*  
**begin**

**lemma** *faccs'-invar*:  
**assumes** *HI*[*simp, intro!*]: *hta-has-idx-f H*  
**shows** *ls-invar* (*faccs' H t*) (**is** ?*T1*)  
   *list-all ls-invar* (*List.map* (*faccs' H*) *ts*) (**is** ?*T2*)  
**proof** —  
**have** ?*T1*  $\wedge$  ?*T2*  
**apply** (*induct rule: compat-tree-tree-list.induct*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: ll-set-xy.image-filter-correct hta-lookup-f-correct*)  
**done**  
**thus** ?*T1* ?*T2* **by** *auto*  
**qed**

**declare** *faccs'-invar*(1)[*simp*, *intro*]

**lemma** *faccs'-correct*:

**assumes** *HI*[*simp*, *intro!*]: *hta-has-idx-f H*

**shows**

$ls-\alpha (faccs' H t) = faccs (ls-\alpha (hta-\delta H)) t$  (**is** ?*T1*)  
 $List.map\ ls-\alpha (List.map (faccs' H) ts)$   
 $= List.map (faccs (ls-\alpha (hta-\delta H))) ts$  (**is** ?*T2*)

**proof** –

**have** ?*T1*  $\wedge$  ?*T2*

**proof** (*induct rule: compat-tree-tree-list.induct*)

**case** (*NODE f ts*)

**let** ? $\delta = (ls-\alpha (hta-\delta H))$

**have** *faccs* ? $\delta$  (*NODE f ts*) = (

$let\ Qs = List.map (faccs\ ?\delta)\ ts\ in$   
 $\{q. \exists r \in ?\delta. r-matchc\ q\ f\ Qs\ r\}$ )

**by** (*rule faccs.simps*)

**also note** *NODE.hyps*[*symmetric*]

**finally have**

$1: faccs\ ?\delta (NODE\ f\ ts)$   
 $= (let\ Qs = List.map\ ls-\alpha (List.map (faccs' H) ts)\ in$   
 $\{q. \exists r \in ?\delta. r-matchc\ q\ f\ Qs\ r\}) .$

{

**fix** *Qsc*:: 'Q *ls list*

**assume** *QI*: *list-all ls-invar Qsc*

**let** ?*Qs* = *List.map ls-\alpha Qsc*

**have**  $\{q. \exists r \in ?\delta. r-matchc\ q\ f\ ?Qs\ r\}$

$= \{q. \exists qs. (q \rightarrow f\ qs) \in ?\delta \wedge r-match\ ?Qs\ qs\}$

**apply** (*safe*)

**apply** (*case-tac r*)

**apply** *auto* [1]

**apply** *force*

**done**

**also have** ... = *lhs* '  $\{r \in \{r \in ?\delta. rhsl\ r = f\}$ .

$case\ r\ of\ (q \rightarrow f'\ qs) \Rightarrow r-match\ ?Qs\ qs\}$

**apply** *auto*

**apply** *force*

**apply** (*case-tac xa*)

**apply** *auto*

**done**

**finally have**

$1: \{q. \exists r \in ?\delta. r-matchc\ q\ f\ ?Qs\ r\}$

$= lhs\ ' \{r \in \{r \in ?\delta. rhsl\ r = f\}$ .

$case\ r\ of\ (q \rightarrow f'\ qs) \Rightarrow r-match\ ?Qs\ qs\}$

**by** *auto*

**from** *QI* **have**

[*simp*]: !!*qs*. *list-all-zip* ( $\lambda Q\ q. q \in ls-\alpha\ Q$ ) *Qsc qs*

$\longleftrightarrow list-all-zip (\lambda Q\ q. ls-memb\ q\ Q) Qsc\ qs$

```

apply (induct Qsc)
apply (case-tac qs)
apply auto [2]
apply (case-tac qs)
apply (auto simp add: ls.correct) [2]
done
have 2: !!qs. r-match ?Qs qs = list-all-zip ( $\lambda a b. \text{ls-memb } b a$ ) Qsc qs
apply (unfold r-match-by-laz)
apply (simp add: list-all-zip-map1)
done
from 1 have
  { q.  $\exists r \in ?\delta. \text{r-matchc } q f ?Qs r$  }
  = lhs ‘ {  $r \in \{r \in ?\delta. \text{r-hsl } r = f\}$ .
    case r of (q  $\rightarrow$  f' qs)  $\Rightarrow$ 
      list-all-zip ( $\lambda a b. \text{ls-memb } b a$ ) Qsc qs }
  by (simp only: 2)
also have
  ... = lhs ‘ {  $r \in \text{ls-}\alpha$  (hta-lookup-f H).
    case r of (q  $\rightarrow$  f' qs)  $\Rightarrow$ 
      list-all-zip ( $\lambda a b. \text{ls-memb } b a$ ) Qsc qs }
  by (simp add: hta-lookup-f-correct)
also have
  ... = ls-}\alpha ( ll-set-xy.g-image-filter
    ( $\lambda r. \text{case } r \text{ of } (q \rightarrow f' qs) \Rightarrow$ 
      (if (list-all-zip ( $\lambda Q q. \text{ls-memb } q Q$ ) Qsc qs) then Some (lhs
r) else None))
    (hta-lookup-f H)
  )
apply (simp add: ll-set-xy.image-filter-correct hta-lookup-f-correct)
apply (auto split: ta-rule.split)
apply (rule-tac x=xa in exI)
apply auto
apply (case-tac a)
apply (simp add: image-iff)
apply (rule-tac x=a in exI)
apply auto
done
finally have
  { q.  $\exists r \in ?\delta. \text{r-matchc } q f ?Qs r$  }
  = ls-}\alpha ( ll-set-xy.g-image-filter
    ( $\lambda r. \text{case } r \text{ of } (q \rightarrow f' qs) \Rightarrow$ 
      (if (list-all-zip ( $\lambda Q q. \text{ls-memb } q Q$ ) Qsc qs) then Some (lhs r)
      else None))
    (hta-lookup-f H) ) .
} note 2=this

from
  1
  2[ where Qsc2 = (List.map (faccs' H) ts),

```



```

      simplified faccs'-invar[OF HI]]
    show ?case by simp
  qed simp-all
  thus ?T1 ?T2 by auto
qed

```

— Correctness of the algorithms for the word problem

```

lemma hta-mem'-correct:
  hta-has-idx-f H  $\implies$  hta-mem' t H  $\longleftrightarrow$  t $\in$ ta-lang (hta- $\alpha$  H)
  apply (unfold ta-lang-def hta- $\alpha$ -def hta-mem'-def)
  apply (auto simp add: lh-set-xx.disjoint-correct faccs'-correct faccs-alt)
done

```

```

theorem hta-mem-correct: hta-mem t H  $\longleftrightarrow$  t $\in$ ta-lang (hta- $\alpha$  H)
  using hashedTa.hta-mem'-correct[OF hta-ensure-idx-f-correct, simplified]
  apply (unfold hta-mem-def)
  apply simp
done

```

end

## 5.5 Product Automaton and Intersection

### 5.5.1 Brute Force Product Automaton

In this section, an algorithm that computes the product automaton without reduction is implemented. While the runtime is always quadratic, this algorithm is very simple and the constant factors are smaller than that of the version with integrated reduction. Moreover, lazy languages like Haskell seem to profit from this algorithm.

**definition**  $\delta$ -prod-h

```

:: ('q1::hashable,'l::hashable) ta-rule ls
   $\Rightarrow$  ('q2::hashable,'l) ta-rule ls  $\Rightarrow$  ('q1  $\times$  'q2,'l) ta-rule ls
where  $\delta$ -prod-h  $\delta 1$   $\delta 2$  ==
  lll-iftl-cp.inj-image-filter-cp ( $\lambda(r1,r2).$  r-prod r1 r2)
    ( $\lambda(r1,r2).$  rhsl r1 = rhsl r2
       $\wedge$  length (rhsq r1) = length (rhsq r2))
   $\delta 1$   $\delta 2$ 

```

**lemma** r-prod-inj:

```

[[ rhsl r1 = rhsl r2; length (rhsq r1) = length (rhsq r2);
  rhsl r1' = rhsl r2'; length (rhsq r1') = length (rhsq r2');
  r-prod r1 r2 = r-prod r1' r2' ]]  $\implies$  r1=r1'  $\wedge$  r2=r2'
apply (cases r1, cases r2, cases r1', cases r2')
apply (auto dest: zip-inj)
done

```

**lemma**  $\delta$ -prod-h-correct:

```

assumes INV[simp]: ls-invar  $\delta 1$     ls-invar  $\delta 2$ 

```

```

shows
   $ls-\alpha (\delta\text{-prod-h } \delta 1 \delta 2) = \delta\text{-prod } (ls-\alpha \delta 1) (ls-\alpha \delta 2)$ 
   $ls\text{-invar } (\delta\text{-prod-h } \delta 1 \delta 2)$ 
apply (unfold  $\delta\text{-prod-def } \delta\text{-prod-h-def}$ )
apply (subst lll-iftt-cp.inj-image-filter-cp-correct)
apply simp-all [2]
using r-prod-inj
apply (auto intro!: inj-onI) []
apply auto []
apply (case-tac xa, case-tac y, simp, blast)
apply force
apply simp
done

```

**definition** *hta-prodWR* *H1 H2* ==  
*init-hta* (*hhh-cart.cart* (*hta-Qi H1*) (*hta-Qi H2*)) ( $\delta\text{-prod-h } (hta-\delta H1) (hta-\delta H2)$ )

**lemma** *hta-prodWR-correct-aux*:

**assumes** *A*: *hashedTa H1*    *hashedTa H2*

**shows**

$hta-\alpha (hta\text{-prodWR } H1 H2) = ta\text{-prod } (hta-\alpha H1) (hta-\alpha H2)$  (**is** ?*T1*)  
*hashedTa* (*hta-prodWR H1 H2*) (**is** ?*T2*)

**proof** –

**interpret** *a1*: *hashedTa H1* + *a2*: *hashedTa H2* **using** *A* .

**show** ?*T1* ?*T2*

**apply** (*unfold* *hta-prodWR-def* *init-hta-def* *hta-\alpha-def* *ta-prod-def*)

**apply** (*simp* *add*: *hhh-cart.cart-correct*  $\delta\text{-prod-h-correct}$ )

**apply** (*unfold-locales*)

**apply** (*simp-all* *add*: *hhh-cart.cart-correct*  $\delta\text{-prod-h-correct}$ )

**done**

**qed**

**lemma** *hta-prodWR-correct*:

**assumes** *TA*: *hashedTa H1*    *hashedTa H2*

**shows**

$ta\text{-lang } (hta-\alpha (hta\text{-prodWR } H1 H2))$   
 $= ta\text{-lang } (hta-\alpha H1) \cap ta\text{-lang } (hta-\alpha H2)$   
*hashedTa* (*hta-prodWR H1 H2*)

**by** (*simp-all* *add*: *hta-prodWR-correct-aux*[*OF TA*] *ta-prod-correct-aux1*)

## 5.5.2 Product Automaton with Forward-Reduction

A more elaborated algorithm combines forward-reduction and the product construction, i.e. product rules are only created „by need”.

**type-synonym** (*'q1,'q2,'l*) *pa-state*

$= ('q1 \times 'q2) \text{ hs} \times ('q1 \times 'q2) \text{ list} \times ('q1 \times 'q2, 'l) \text{ ta-rule } \text{ls}$

— Abstraction mapping to algorithm specified in Section 4.

**definition** *pa-\alpha*

```

:: ('q1::hashable,'q2::hashable,'l::hashable) pa-state
  => ('q1,'q2,'l) frp-state
where pa- $\alpha$  S == let (Q,W, $\delta d$ )=S in (hs- $\alpha$  Q,W,ls- $\alpha$   $\delta d$ )

```

**definition** pa-cond

```

:: ('q1::hashable,'q2::hashable,'l::hashable) pa-state => bool
where pa-cond S == let (Q,W, $\delta d$ ) = S in W $\neq$ []

```

— Adds all successor states to the set of discovered states and to the worklist

**fun** pa-upd-rule

```

:: ('q1 $\times$ 'q2) hs => ('q1 $\times$ 'q2) list
  => (('q1::hashable) $\times$ ('q2::hashable)) list
  => (('q1 $\times$ 'q2) hs  $\times$  ('q1 $\times$ 'q2) list)
where
  pa-upd-rule Q W [] = (Q,W) |
  pa-upd-rule Q W (qp#qs) = (
    if  $\neg$  hs-memb qp Q then
      pa-upd-rule (hs-ins qp Q) (qp#W) qs
    else pa-upd-rule Q W qs
  )

```

**definition** pa-step

```

:: ('q1::hashable,'l::hashable) hashedTa
  => ('q2::hashable,'l) hashedTa
  => ('q1,'q2,'l) pa-state => ('q1,'q2,'l) pa-state
where pa-step H1 H2 S == let
  (Q,W, $\delta d$ )=S;
  (q1,q2)=hd W
  in
  ls-iteratei (hta-lookup-s q1 H1) ( $\lambda$ -. True) ( $\lambda$ r1 res.
  ls-iteratei (hta-lookup-sf q2 (rhsl r1) H2) ( $\lambda$ -. True) ( $\lambda$ r2 res.
  if (length (rhsq r1) = length (rhsq r2)) then
    let
      rp=r-prod r1 r2;
      (Q',W', $\delta d$ ) = res;
      (Q',W') = pa-upd-rule Q W (rhsq rp)
    in
      (Q',W',ls-ins-dj rp  $\delta d$ )
  else
    res
  ) res
  ) (Q,tl W, $\delta d$ )

```

**definition** pa-initial

```

:: ('q1::hashable,'l::hashable) hashedTa
  => ('q2::hashable,'l) hashedTa
  => ('q1,'q2,'l) pa-state

```

**where** *pa-initial* *H1 H2* ==  
 let *Qip* = *hhh-cart.cart* (*hta-Qi H1*) (*hta-Qi H2*) in (  
   *Qip*,  
   *hs-to-list Qip*,  
   *ls-empty* ())  
 )

**definition** *pa-invar-add*::  
 ('*q1*::*hashable*, '*q2*::*hashable*, '*l*::*hashable*) *pa-state set*  
**where** *pa-invar-add* == { (*Q, W, δd*). *hs-invar Q* ∧ *ls-invar δd* }

**definition** *pa-invar H1 H2* ==  
*pa-invar-add* ∩ { *s*. (*pa-α s*) ∈ *frp-invar* (*hta-α H1*) (*hta-α H2*) }

**definition** *pa-det-algo H1 H2*  
 == ( | *dwa-cond* = *pa-cond*,  
       *dwa-step* = *pa-step H1 H2*,  
       *dwa-initial* = *pa-initial H1 H2*,  
       *dwa-invar* = *pa-invar H1 H2* | )

**lemma** *pa-upd-rule-correct*:  
**assumes** *INV*[*simp, intro!*]: *hs-invar Q*  
**assumes** *FMT*: *pa-upd-rule Q W qs = (Q', W')*  
**shows**  
   *hs-invar Q' (is ?T1)*  
   *hs-α Q' = hs-α Q ∪ set qs (is ?T2)*  
   ∃ *Wn. distinct Wn* ∧ *set Wn = set qs - hs-α Q* ∧ *W' = Wn @ W (is ?T3)*

**proof** –  
**from** *INV FMT* **have** *?T1* ∧ *?T2* ∧ *?T3*  
**proof** (*induct qs arbitrary: Q W Q' W'*)  
  **case Nil thus ?case by simp**  
**next**  
  **case** (*Cons q qs Q W Q' W'*)  
  **show** *?case*  
  **proof** (*cases q ∈ hs-α Q*)  
    **case True**  
    **obtain** *Qh Wh* **where** *RF: pa-upd-rule Q W qs = (Qh, Wh)* **by force**  
    **with** *True Cons.prem*s **have** [*simp*]: *Q' = Qh*    *W' = Wh*  
    **by** (*auto simp add: hs.correct*)  
    **from** *Cons.hyps*[*OF Cons.prem*s(1) *RF*] **have**  
      *hs-invar Qh*  
      *hs-α Qh = hs-α Q ∪ set qs*  
      (∃ *Wn. distinct Wn* ∧ *set Wn = set qs - hs-α Q* ∧ *Wh = Wn @ W*)  
    **by auto**  
    **thus ?thesis using True by auto**  
  **next**  
  **case False**  
  **with** *Cons.prem*s **have** *RF: pa-upd-rule (hs-ins q Q) (q#W) qs = (Q', W')*  
  **by** (*auto simp add: hs.correct*)

```

from Cons.hyps[OF - RF] Cons.prems(1) have
  hs-invar Q'
  hs-α Q' = insert q (hs-α Q) ∪ set (qs)
   $\exists Wn. \text{distinct } Wn$ 
     $\wedge \text{set } Wn = \text{set } qs - \text{insert } q (hs-α Q)$ 
     $\wedge W' = Wn @ q \# W$ 
  by (auto simp add: hs.correct)
  thus ?thesis using False by auto
qed
qed
thus ?T1 ?T2 ?T3 by auto
qed

```

**lemma** *pa-step-correct*:

```

assumes TA: hashedTa H1 hashedTa H2
assumes idx[simp]: hta-has-idx-s H1 hta-has-idx-sf H2
assumes INV: (Q, W, δd) ∈ pa-invar H1 H2
assumes COND: pa-cond (Q, W, δd)
shows
  (pa-step H1 H2 (Q, W, δd) ∈ pa-invar-add (is ?T1)
  (pa-α (Q, W, δd), pa-α (pa-step H1 H2 (Q, W, δd))
   $\in \text{frp-step (ls-α (hta-δ H1)) (ls-α (hta-δ H2)) (is ?T2)$ )
proof –
interpret h1: hashedTa H1 by fact
interpret h2: hashedTa H2 by fact

```

**from** *COND* **obtain** *q1 q2 Wtl* **where**

```

[simp]: W = (q1, q2) # Wtl
by (cases W) (auto simp add: pa-cond-def)

```

**from** *INV* **have** [*simp*]: *hs-invar Q ls-invar δd*  
**by** (*auto simp add: pa-invar-add-def pa-invar-def*)

**define** *inv* **where** *inv = (λδp (Q', W', δd').*

```

  hs-invar Q'
   $\wedge \text{ls-invar } \delta d'$ 
   $\wedge (\exists Wn. \text{distinct } Wn$ 
     $\wedge \text{set } Wn = (f\text{-succ } \delta p \text{ “}\{(q1, q2)\}\text{”) - } hs-α Q$ 
     $\wedge W' = Wn @ Wtl$ 
     $\wedge hs-α Q' = hs-α Q \cup (f\text{-succ } \delta p \text{ “}\{(q1, q2)\}\text{”})$ 
   $\wedge (ls-α \delta d' = ls-α \delta d \cup \{r \in \delta p. \text{lhs } r = (q1, q2)\})$ )

```

**have** *G: inv (δ-prod (ls-α (hta-δ H1)) (ls-α (hta-δ H2)))*  
 (*pa-step H1 H2 (Q, W, δd)*)

**apply** (*unfold pa-step-def*)

**apply** *simp*

**apply** (*rule-tac*)

$I = \lambda it1 \text{ res. inv } (\delta\text{-prod } (ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H1)} - it1) (ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H2)})) \text{ res}$   
**in** *ls.iterate-rule-P*)  
— Invar  
**apply** (*simp add: h1.hta-lookup-s-correct*)  
— Initial  
**apply** (*fastforce simp add: inv-def*  $\delta\text{-prod-def}$  *h1.hta-lookup-s-correct*  
*f-succ-alt*)  
— Step  
**apply** (*rule-tac*  
 $I = \lambda it2 \text{ res. inv } (\delta\text{-prod } (ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H1)} - it) (ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H2)})$   
 $\cup \delta\text{-prod } \{x\} (ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H2)} - it2))$   
*res*  
**in** *ls.iterate-rule-P*)  
— Invar  
**apply** (*simp add: h2.hta-lookup-sf-correct*)  
— Init  
**apply** (*case-tac*  $\sigma$ )  
**apply** (*simp add: inv-def* *h1.hta-lookup-s-correct* *h2.hta-lookup-sf-correct*)  
**apply** (*force simp add: f-succ-alt elim:*  $\delta\text{-prodE}$  *intro:*  $\delta\text{-prodI}$ ) [1]  
— Step  
**defer** — Requires considerably more work: Deferred to Isar proof below  
— Final  
**apply** (*simp add: h1.hta-lookup-s-correct* *h2.hta-lookup-sf-correct*)  
**apply** (*auto*) [1]  
**apply** (*subgoal-tac*  
 $ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H1)} - (it - \{x\}) = (ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H1)} - it) \cup \{x\}$ )  
**apply** (*simp add:*  $\delta\text{-prod-insert}$ )  
**apply** (*subst* *Un-commute*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** *blast*  
— Final  
**apply** *force*  
**proof** *goal-cases*  
**case** *prems: (1 r1 it1 resxh r2 it2 resh)*  
— Resolve lookup-operations  
**hence**  $G'$ :  
 $it1 \subseteq \{r \in ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H1)}. lhs \ r = q1\}$   
 $it2 \subseteq \{r \in ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H2)}. lhs \ r = q2 \wedge r\ hsl \ r = r\ hsl \ r1\}$   
**by** (*simp-all add: h1.hta-lookup-s-correct* *h2.hta-lookup-sf-correct*)  
— Basic reasoning setup  
**from** *prems(1,4)*  $G'$  **have**  
 $[simp]: ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H2)} - (it2 - \{r2\}) = (ls\text{-}\alpha \text{ (hta-}\delta \text{ H2)} - it2) \cup \{r2\}$   
**by** *auto*  
**obtain**  $Qh \ Wh \ \delta dh \ Q' \ W' \ \delta d'$  **where**  $[simp]: resh = (Qh, Wh, \delta dh)$   
**by** (*cases* *resh*) *fastforce*  
**from** *prems(6)* **have** *INVAH*  $[simp]: hs\text{-invar } Qh \quad ls\text{-invar } \delta dh$   
**by** (*auto simp add: inv-def*)

— The involved rules have the same label, and their lhs is determined  
**from**  $\text{prems}(1,4)$   $G'$  **obtain**  $l$   $qs1$   $qs2$  **where**  
*RULE-FMT*:  $r1 = (q1 \rightarrow l\ qs1)$      $r2 = (q2 \rightarrow l\ qs2)$   
**apply** (*cases*  $r1$ , *cases*  $r2$ )  
**apply** *force*  
**done**

{  
— If the rhs have different lengths, the algorithm ignores the rule:  
**assume** *LEN*:  $\text{length}(rhsq\ r1) \neq \text{length}(rhsq\ r2)$

**hence** [*simp*]:  $\delta\text{-prod-sng2}\ \{r1\}\ r2 = \{\}$   
**by** (*auto simp add: \delta-prod-sng2-def split: ta-rule.split*)

**have** *?case using prems*  
**by** (*simp add: LEN \delta-prod-insert*)

} **moreover** {  
— If the rhs have the same length, the rule is inserted  
**assume** *LEN*:  $\text{length}(rhsq\ r1) = \text{length}(rhsq\ r2)$   
**hence** [*simp*]:  $\text{length}\ qs1 = \text{length}\ qs2$  **by** (*simp add: RULE-FMT*)

**hence** [*simp*]:  $\delta\text{-prod-sng2}\ \{r1\}\ r2 = \{(q1, q2) \rightarrow l\ (zip\ qs1\ qs2)\}$   
**using**  $\text{prems}(1,4)$   $G'$   
**by** (*auto simp add: \delta-prod-sng2-def RULE-FMT*)

— Obtain invariant of previous state

**from**  $\text{prems}(6)$  [*unfolded inv-def, simplified*] **obtain**  $Wn$  **where** *INVH*:  
*distinct*  $Wn$

*set*  $Wn = f\text{-succ}\ (\delta\text{-prod}\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H1) - it1)\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H2))$   
 $\cup\ \delta\text{-prod}\ \{r1\}\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H2) - it2)$   
“  $\{(q1, q2)\} - hs\text{-}\alpha\ Q$

$Wh = Wn\ @\ Wt$

$hs\text{-}\alpha\ Qh = hs\text{-}\alpha\ Q$   
 $\cup\ f\text{-succ}\ (\delta\text{-prod}\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H1) - it1)\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H2))$   
 $\cup\ \delta\text{-prod}\ \{r1\}\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H2) - it2)$   
“  $\{(q1, q2)\}$

$ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta dh = ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta d$

$\cup\ \{r.\ (r \in \delta\text{-prod}\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H1) - it1)\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H2))$   
 $\vee\ r \in \delta\text{-prod}\ \{r1\}\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H2) - it2)$   
 $\} \wedge\ lhs\ r = (q1, q2)$

}  
**by** *blast*

— Required to justify disjoint insert

**have** *RPD*:  $r\text{-prod}\ r1\ r2 \notin ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta dh$

**proof** —

**from** *INV* [*unfolded pa-invar-def frp-invar-def frp-invar-add-def*]

**have** *LSDD*:

$ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta d = \{r \in \delta\text{-prod}\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H1))\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H2))\}.$

$lhs\ r \in hs\text{-}\alpha\ Q - set\ W\}$

**by** (*auto simp add: pa- $\alpha$ -def hta- $\alpha$ -def*)

**have**  $r\text{-prod}\ r1\ r2 \notin ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta d$

**proof**

**assume**  $r\text{-prod}\ r1\ r2 \in ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta d$

**with** *LSD* **have**  $lhs\ (r\text{-prod}\ r1\ r2) \notin set\ W$  **by** *auto*

**moreover from** *prems(1,4)* **have**  $lhs\ (r\text{-prod}\ r1\ r2) = (q1, q2)$

**by** (*cases r1, cases r2*) *auto*

**ultimately show** *False* **by** *simp*

**qed**

**moreover from** *prems(6)* **have**  $ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta dh =$

$ls\text{-}\alpha\ \delta d \cup$

$\{r. (r \in \delta\text{-prod}\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H1) - it1)\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H2)))$

$\vee r \in \delta\text{-prod}\ \{r1\}\ (ls\text{-}\alpha\ (hta\text{-}\delta\ H2) - it2)$

$\} \wedge lhs\ r = (q1, q2)\}$  (**is**  $- = - \cup ?s$ )

**by** (*simp add: inv-def*)

**moreover have**  $r\text{-prod}\ r1\ r2 \notin ?s$  **using** *prems(1,4)* *G'(2)* *LEN*

**apply** (*cases r1, cases r2*)

**apply** (*auto simp add:  $\delta$ -prod-def*)

**done**

**ultimately show** *?thesis* **by** *blast*

**qed**

— Correctness of result of *pa-upd-rule*

**obtain**  $Q'\ W'$  **where**

*PAUF*:  $(pa\text{-upd}\text{-rule}\ Qh\ Wh\ (rhsq\ (r\text{-prod}\ r1\ r2))) = (Q', W')$

**by** *force*

**from** *pa-upd-rule-correct[OF INVAH(1) PAUF]* **obtain**  $Wnn$  **where** *UC*:

*hs-invar*  $Q'$

$hs\text{-}\alpha\ Q' = hs\text{-}\alpha\ Qh \cup set\ (rhsq\ (r\text{-prod}\ r1\ r2))$

*distinct*  $Wnn$

$set\ Wnn = set\ (rhsq\ (r\text{-prod}\ r1\ r2)) - hs\text{-}\alpha\ Qh$

$W' = Wnn\ @\ Wh$

**by** *blast*

— Put it all together

**have** *?case*

**apply** (*simp add: LEN Let-def ls.ins-dj-correct[OF INVAH(2) RPD]*)

*PAUF inv-def UC(1)*)

**apply** (*intro conjI*)

**apply** (*rule-tac x=Wnn@Wn in exI*)

**apply** (*auto simp add: f-succ-alt  $\delta$ -prod-insert RULE-FMT UC INVH*)

*$\delta$ -prod-sng2-def  $\delta$ -prod-sng1-def*)

**done**

**} ultimately show** *?case* **by** *blast*

**qed**

**from** *G* **show** *?T1*

**by** (*cases pa-step H1 H2 (Q, W,  $\delta d$ )*)

(*simp add: pa-invar-add-def inv-def*)



```

from  $G$  show  $?T2$ 
  by (cases pa-step H1 H2 (Q, W,  $\delta d$ ))
    (auto simp add: inv-def pa- $\alpha$ -def Let-def intro: frp-step.intros)

```

qed

— The product-automaton algorithm is a precise implementation of its specification

```

lemma pa-pref-frp:
  assumes  $TA$ : hashedTa H1 hashedTa H2
  assumes  $idx[simp]$ : hta-has-idx-s H1 hta-has-idx-sf H2

  shows wa-precise-refine (det-wa-wa (pa-det-algo H1 H2))
    (frp-algo (hta- $\alpha$  H1) (hta- $\alpha$  H2))
    pa- $\alpha$ 

```

**proof** —

```

interpret  $h1$ : hashedTa H1 by fact
interpret  $h2$ : hashedTa H2 by fact

```

**show** *?thesis*

```

  apply (unfold-locales)
  apply (auto simp add: det-wa-wa-def pa-det-algo-def pa- $\alpha$ -def
    pa-cond-def frp-algo-def frp-cond-def) [1]
  apply (auto simp add: det-wa-wa-def pa-det-algo-def pa-cond-def
    hta- $\alpha$ -def frp-algo-def frp-cond-def
    intro!: pa-step-correct(2)[OF TA]) [1]
  apply (auto simp add: det-wa-wa-def pa-det-algo-def pa- $\alpha$ -def
    hta- $\alpha$ -def pa-cond-def frp-algo-def frp-cond-def
    pa-invar-def pa-step-def pa-initial-def
    hs.correct ls.correct Let-def hhh-cart.cart-correct
    intro: frp-initial.intros

```

```

) [3]

```

**done**

qed

— The product automaton algorithm is a correct while-algorithm

```

lemma pa-while-algo:
  assumes  $TA$ : hashedTa H1 hashedTa H2
  assumes  $idx[simp]$ : hta-has-idx-s H1 hta-has-idx-sf H2

```

```

  shows while-algo (det-wa-wa (pa-det-algo H1 H2))

```

**proof** —

```

interpret  $h1$ : hashedTa H1 by fact
interpret  $h2$ : hashedTa H2 by fact

```

```

interpret  $ref$ : wa-precise-refine (det-wa-wa (pa-det-algo H1 H2))

```

```

                                (frp-algo (hta-α H1) (hta-α H2))
                                pa-α
using pa-pref-frp[OF TA idx] .
show ?thesis
apply (rule ref.wa-intro)
apply (simp add: frp-while-algo)
apply (simp add: det-wa-wa-def pa-det-algo-def pa-invar-def frp-algo-def)

apply (auto simp add: det-wa-wa-def pa-det-algo-def) [1]
apply (rule pa-step-correct(1)[OF TA idx])
apply (auto simp add: pa-invar-def frp-algo-def) [2]

apply (simp add: det-wa-wa-def pa-det-algo-def pa-initial-def
              pa-invar-add-def Let-def hhh-cart.cart-correct ls.correct)

done
qed

```

— By definition, the product automaton algorithm is deterministic  
**lemmas** pa-det-while-algo = det-while-algo-intro[OF pa-while-algo]

— Transferred correctness lemma

**lemmas** pa-inv-final =  
 wa-precise-refine.transfer-correctness[OF pa-pref-frp frp-inv-final]

— The next two definitions specify the product-automata algorithm. The first version requires the s-index of the first and the sf-index of the second automaton to be present, while the second version computes the required indices, if necessary

**definition** hta-prod' H1 H2 ==  
 let (Q, W, δd) = while pa-cond (pa-step H1 H2) (pa-initial H1 H2) in  
 init-hta (hhh-cart.cart (hta-Qi H1) (hta-Qi H2)) δd

**definition** hta-prod H1 H2 ==  
 hta-prod' (hta-ensure-idx-s H1) (hta-ensure-idx-sf H2)

**lemma** hta-prod'-correct-aux:

```

assumes TA: hashedTa H1   hashedTa H2
assumes idx: hta-has-idx-s H1   hta-has-idx-sf H2
shows hta-α (hta-prod' H1 H2)
         = ta-fwd-reduce (ta-prod (hta-α H1) (hta-α H2)) (is ?T1)
         hashedTa (hta-prod' H1 H2) (is ?T2)

```

**proof** –

```

interpret h1: hashedTa H1 by fact
interpret h2: hashedTa H2 by fact

```

```

interpret dwa: det-while-algo pa-det-algo H1 H2

```

```

using pa-det-while-algo[OF TA idx] .

have LC: while pa-cond (pa-step H1 H2) (pa-initial H1 H2) = dwa.loop
  by (unfold dwa.loop-def)
      (simp add: pa-det-algo-def)

from dwa.while-proof'[OF pa-inv-final[OF TA idx]]
show ?T1
  apply (unfold dwa.loop-def)
  apply (simp add: hta-prod'-def init-hta-def hta-α-def pa-det-algo-def)
  apply (cases (while pa-cond (pa-step H1 H2) (pa-initial H1 H2)))
  apply (simp add: pa-α-def hhh-cart.cart-correct hta-α-def)
  done

show ?T2
  apply (simp add: hta-prod'-def LC)
  apply (rule dwa.while-proof)
  apply (case-tac s)
  apply (simp add: pa-det-algo-def pa-invar-add-def pa-invar-def init-hta-def)
  apply unfold-locales
  apply (simp-all add: hhh-cart.cart-correct)
  done
qed

theorem hta-prod'-correct:
  assumes TA: hashedTa H1 hashedTa H2
  assumes HI: hta-has-idx-s H1 hta-has-idx-sf H2
  shows
    ta-lang (hta-α (hta-prod' H1 H2))
    = ta-lang (hta-α H1) ∩ ta-lang (hta-α H2)

    hashedTa (hta-prod' H1 H2)
  by (simp-all add: hta-prod'-correct-aux[OF TA HI] ta-prod-correct-aux1)

lemma hta-prod-correct-aux:
  assumes TA[simp]: hashedTa H1 hashedTa H2
  shows
    hta-α (hta-prod H1 H2) = ta-fwd-reduce (ta-prod (hta-α H1) (hta-α H2))
    hashedTa (hta-prod H1 H2)
  by (unfold hta-prod-def)
      (simp-all add: hta-prod'-correct-aux)

theorem hta-prod-correct:
  assumes TA: hashedTa H1 hashedTa H2
  shows
    ta-lang (hta-α (hta-prod H1 H2))
    = ta-lang (hta-α H1) ∩ ta-lang (hta-α H2)
    hashedTa (hta-prod H1 H2)
  by (simp-all add: hta-prod-correct-aux[OF TA] ta-prod-correct-aux1)

```

## 5.6 Remap States

**definition** *hta-remap*

$:: ('q::hashable \Rightarrow 'qn::hashable) \Rightarrow ('q,'l::hashable) hashedTa$   
 $\Rightarrow ('qn,'l) hashedTa$

**where** *hta-remap*  $f H ==$

$init-hta (hh-set-xy.g-image f (hta-Qi H))$   
 $(ll-set-xy.g-image (remap-rule f) (hta-\delta H))$

**lemma** (**in** *hashedTa*) *hta-remap-correct*:

**shows**  $hta-\alpha (hta-remap f H) = ta-remap f (hta-\alpha H)$   
 $hashedTa (hta-remap f H)$

**apply** (*auto*

$simp add: hta-remap-def init-hta-def hta-\alpha-def$   
 $hh-set-xy.image-correct ll-set-xy.image-correct ta-remap-def$ )

**apply** (*unfold-locales*)

**apply** (*auto simp add: hh-set-xy.image-correct ll-set-xy.image-correct*)

**done**

### 5.6.1 Reindex Automaton

In this section, an algorithm for re-indexing the states of the automaton to an initial segment of the naturals is implemented. The language of the automaton is not changed by the reindexing operation.

**fun** *rule-states-l* **where**

$rule-states-l (q \rightarrow f qs) = ls-ins q (ls.from-list qs)$

**lemma** *rule-states-l-correct*[*simp*]:

$ls-\alpha (rule-states-l r) = rule-states r$

$ls-invar (rule-states-l r)$

**by** (*cases r, simp add: ls.correct*)**+**

**definition** *hta-\delta-states*  $H$

$== (llh-set-xyy.g-Union-image id (ll-set-xy.g-image-filter$   
 $(\lambda r. Some (rule-states-l r)) (hta-\delta H)))$

**definition** *hta-states*  $H ==$

$hs-union (hta-Qi H) (hta-\delta-states H)$

**lemma** (**in** *hashedTa*) *hta-\delta-states-correct*:

$hs-\alpha (hta-\delta-states H) = \delta-states (ta-rules (hta-\alpha H))$

$hs-invar (hta-\delta-states H)$

**proof** (*simp-all add: hta-\alpha-def hta-\delta-states-def, goal-cases*)

**case** *1*

**have**

$[simp]: ls-\alpha (ll-set-xy.g-image-filter (\lambda x. Some (rule-states-l x)) \delta)$   
 $= rule-states-l ' ls-\alpha \delta$

**by** (*auto simp add: ll-set-xy.image-filter-correct*)

**show** *?case*

```

apply (simp add:  $\delta$ -states-def)
apply (subst
  llh-set-xyy.Union-image-correct[
    of (ll-set-xy.g-image-filter ( $\lambda x$ . Some (rule-states-l x))  $\delta$ ),
    simplified])
apply (auto simp add: ll-set-xy.image-filter-correct)
done

```

**qed**

```

lemma (in hashedTa) hta-states-correct:
  hs- $\alpha$  (hta-states H) = ta-rstates (hta- $\alpha$  H)
  hs-invar (hta-states H)
by (simp-all
  add: hta-states-def ta-rstates-def hs.correct hta- $\delta$ -states-correct
  hta- $\alpha$ -def)

```

```

definition reindex-map H ==
   $\lambda q$ . the (hm-lookup q (hh-map-to-nat.map-to-nat (hta-states H)))

```

```

definition hta-reindex
  :: ('Q::hashable,'L::hashable) hashedTa  $\Rightarrow$  (nat,'L) hashedTa where
  hta-reindex H == hta-remap (reindex-map H) H

```

```

declare hta-reindex-def [code del]

```

— This version is more efficient, as the map is only computed once

```

lemma [code]: hta-reindex H = (
  let mp = (hh-map-to-nat.map-to-nat (hta-states H)) in
  hta-remap ( $\lambda q$ . the (hm-lookup q mp)) H)

```

```

by (simp add: Let-def hta-reindex-def reindex-map-def)

```

```

lemma (in hashedTa) reindex-map-correct:
  inj-on (reindex-map H) (ta-rstates (hta- $\alpha$  H))

```

**proof** —

```

have [simp]:
  reindex-map H = the  $\circ$  hm- $\alpha$  (hh-map-to-nat.map-to-nat (hta-states H))
by (rule ext)
  (simp add: reindex-map-def hm.correct
  hh-map-to-nat.map-to-nat-correct(4)
  hta-states-correct)

```

**show** ?thesis

```

apply (simp add: hta-states-correct(1)[symmetric])
apply (rule inj-on-map-the)
apply (simp-all add: hh-map-to-nat.map-to-nat-correct hta-states-correct(2))
done

```

qed

**theorem** (in hashedTa) hta-reindex-correct:  
ta-lang (hta- $\alpha$  (hta-reindex H)) = ta-lang (hta- $\alpha$  H)  
hashedTa (hta-reindex H)  
**apply** (unfold hta-reindex-def)  
**apply** (simp-all  
add: hta-remap-correct tree-automaton.remap-lang[OF hta- $\alpha$ -is-ta]  
reindex-map-correct)  
**done**

## 5.7 Union

Computes the union of two automata

**definition** hta-union  
:: ('q1::hashable,'l::hashable) hashedTa  
⇒ ('q2::hashable,'l) hashedTa  
⇒ (('q1,'q2) ustate-wrapper,'l) hashedTa  
**where** hta-union H1 H2 ==  
init-hta (hs-union (hh-set-xy.g-image USW1 (hta-Qi H1))  
(hh-set-xy.g-image USW2 (hta-Qi H2)))  
(ls-union-dj (ll-set-xy.g-image (remap-rule USW1) (hta- $\delta$  H1))  
(ll-set-xy.g-image (remap-rule USW2) (hta- $\delta$  H2)))

**lemma** hta-union-correct':  
**assumes** TA: hashedTa H1 hashedTa H2  
**shows** hta- $\alpha$  (hta-union H1 H2)  
= ta-union-wrap (hta- $\alpha$  H1) (hta- $\alpha$  H2) (is ?T1)  
hashedTa (hta-union H1 H2) (is ?T2)  
**proof** –  
**interpret** a1: hashedTa H1 + a2: hashedTa H2 **using** TA .  
**show** ?T1 ?T2  
**apply** (auto  
simp add: hta-union-def init-hta-def hta- $\alpha$ -def  
hs.correct ls.correct  
ll-set-xy.image-correct hh-set-xy.image-correct  
ta-remap-def ta-union-def ta-union-wrap-def)  
**apply** (unfold-locales)  
**apply** (auto  
simp add: hs.correct ls.correct)  
**done**  
qed

**theorem** hta-union-correct:  
**assumes** TA: hashedTa H1 hashedTa H2  
**shows**  
ta-lang (hta- $\alpha$  (hta-union H1 H2))  
= ta-lang (hta- $\alpha$  H1)  $\cup$  ta-lang (hta- $\alpha$  H2) (is ?T1)  
hashedTa (hta-union H1 H2) (is ?T2)

**proof** –  
**interpret**  $a1: \text{hashedTa } H1 + a2: \text{hashedTa } H2$  **using**  $TA$  .  
**show**  $?T1 ?T2$   
 by (*simp-all add: hta-union-correct'[OF TA] ta-union-wrap-correct*)  
**qed**

## 5.8 Operators to Construct Tree Automata

This section defines operators that add initial states and rules to a tree automaton, and thus incrementally construct a tree automaton from the empty automaton.

**definition**  $\text{hta-empty} :: \text{unit} \Rightarrow ('q::\text{hashable}, 'l::\text{hashable}) \text{hashedTa}$   
**where**  $\text{hta-empty } u == \text{init-hta } (\text{hs-empty } ()) (\text{ls-empty } ())$   
**lemma**  $\text{hta-empty-correct}$  [*simp, intro!*]:  
**shows**  $(\text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-empty } ())) = \text{ta-empty}$   
 $\text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-empty } ())$   
**apply** (*auto*  
*simp add: init-hta-def hta-empty-def hta-}\alpha\text{-def } \delta\text{-states-def ta-empty-def}*  
*hs.correct ls.correct*)  
**apply** (*unfold-locales*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: hs.correct ls.correct*)  
**done**

— Add an initial state to the automaton

**definition**  $\text{hta-add-qi}$   
 $:: 'q \Rightarrow ('q::\text{hashable}, 'l::\text{hashable}) \text{hashedTa} \Rightarrow ('q, 'l) \text{hashedTa}$   
**where**  $\text{hta-add-qi } qi H == \text{init-hta } (\text{hs-ins } qi (\text{hta-Qi } H)) (\text{hta-}\delta H)$

**lemma** (**in**  $\text{hashedTa}$ )  $\text{hta-add-qi-correct}$ [*simp, intro!*]:  
**shows**  $\text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-add-qi } qi H)$   
 $= (\lambda \text{ ta-initial} = \text{insert } qi (\text{ta-initial } (\text{hta-}\alpha H)),$   
 $\text{ta-rules} = \text{ta-rules } (\text{hta-}\alpha H)$   
 $\rangle$   
 $\text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-add-qi } qi H)$   
**apply** (*auto*  
*simp add: init-hta-def hta-add-qi-def hta-}\alpha\text{-def } \delta\text{-states-def}*  
*hs.correct*)  
**apply** (*unfold-locales*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: hs.correct*)  
**done**

**lemmas** [*simp, intro*] =  $\text{hashedTa}.\text{hta-add-qi-correct}$

— Add a rule to the automaton

**definition**  $\text{hta-add-rule}$   
 $:: ('q, 'l) \text{ta-rule} \Rightarrow ('q::\text{hashable}, 'l::\text{hashable}) \text{hashedTa}$   
 $\Rightarrow ('q, 'l) \text{hashedTa}$   
**where**  $\text{hta-add-rule } r H == \text{init-hta } (\text{hta-Qi } H) (\text{ls-ins } r (\text{hta-}\delta H))$

```

lemma (in hashedTa) hta-add-rule-correct[simp, intro!]:
  shows hta- $\alpha$  (hta-add-rule r H)
    = ( $\lceil$  ta-initial = ta-initial (hta- $\alpha$  H),
      ta-rules = insert r (ta-rules (hta- $\alpha$  H))
     $\rceil$ )
    hashedTa (hta-add-rule r H)
apply (auto
  simp add: init-hta-def hta-add-rule-def hta- $\alpha$ -def
     $\delta$ -states-def ls.correct)
apply (unfold-locales)
apply (auto simp add: ls.correct)
done

```

**lemmas** [simp, intro] = hashedTa.hta-add-rule-correct

— Reduces an automaton to the given set of states

```

definition hta-reduce H Q ==
  init-hta (hs-inter Q (hta-Qi H))
    (ll-set-xy.g-image-filter
      ( $\lambda r$ . if hs-memb (lhs r) Q  $\wedge$  list-all ( $\lambda q$ . hs-memb q Q) (rhsq r) then
        Some r else None)
      (hta- $\delta$  H))

```

```

theorem (in hashedTa) hta-reduce-correct:
  assumes INV[simp]: hs-invar Q
  shows
    hta- $\alpha$  (hta-reduce H Q) = ta-reduce (hta- $\alpha$  H) (hs- $\alpha$  Q) (is ?T1)
    hashedTa (hta-reduce H Q) (is ?T2)
apply (auto
  simp add:
    hta-reduce-def ta-reduce-def hta- $\alpha$ -def init-hta-def
    hs.correct ls.correct

    list-all-iff
    reduce-rules-def rule-states-simp
    ll-set-xy.image-filter-correct
  split:
    ta-rule.split-asm
) [1]
apply (unfold-locales)
apply (unfold hta-reduce-def init-hta-def)
apply (auto simp add: hs.correct ls.correct)
done

```



## 5.9 Backwards Reduction and Emptiness Check

The algorithm uses a map from states to the set of rules that contain the state on their rhs.

**definition** *rqrm-add*  $q\ r\ res ==$   
*case hm-lookup*  $q\ res\ of$   
*None*  $\Rightarrow hm-update\ q\ (ls-ins\ r\ (ls-empty\ ()))\ res\ |$   
*Some*  $s \Rightarrow hm-update\ q\ (ls-ins\ r\ s)\ res$

— Lookup the set of rules with given state on rhs

**definition** *rqrm-lookup*  $rqrm\ q == case\ hm-lookup\ q\ rqrm\ of$   
*None*  $\Rightarrow ls-empty\ ()\ |$   
*Some*  $s \Rightarrow s$

— Build the index from a set of rules

**definition** *build-rqrm*  
 $:: ('q::hashable, 'l::hashable)\ ta-rule\ ls$   
 $\Rightarrow ('q, ('q, 'l)\ ta-rule\ ls)\ hm$   
**where**  
*build-rqrm*  $\delta ==$   
*ls-iteratei*  $\delta\ (\lambda-. True)$   
 $(\lambda r\ res.$   
 $\quad foldl\ (\lambda res\ q.\ rqrm-add\ q\ r\ res)\ res\ (rhsq\ r)$   
 $)$   
 $(hm-empty\ ())$

— Whether the index satisfies the map and set invariants

**definition** *rqrm-invar*  $rqrm ==$   
*hm-invar*  $rqrm \wedge (\forall q.\ ls-invar\ (rqrm-lookup\ rqrm\ q))$

— Whether the index really maps a state to the set of rules with this state on their rhs

**definition** *rqrm-prop*  $\delta\ rqrm ==$   
 $\forall q.\ ls-\alpha\ (rqrm-lookup\ rqrm\ q) = \{r \in \delta.\ q \in set\ (rhsq\ r)\}$

**lemma** *rqrm- $\alpha$ -lookup-update*[*simp*]:

*rqrm-invar*  $rqrm \implies$   
 $ls-\alpha\ (rqrm-lookup\ (rqrm-add\ q\ r\ rqrm)\ q')$   
 $= (if\ q=q'\ then$   
 $\quad insert\ r\ (ls-\alpha\ (rqrm-lookup\ rqrm\ q'))$   
 $\quad else$   
 $\quad ls-\alpha\ (rqrm-lookup\ rqrm\ q')$   
 $)$

**by** (*simp*

*add: rqrm-lookup-def rqrm-add-def rqrm-invar-def hm.correct*

*ls.correct*

*split: option.split-asm option.split*)

**lemma** *rqrm-propD*:  
 $rqrm-prop \delta rqrm \implies ls-\alpha (rqrm-lookup rqrm q) = \{r \in \delta. q \in set (rhsq r)\}$   
**by** (*simp add: rqrm-prop-def*)

**lemma** *build-rqrm-correct*:  
**fixes**  $\delta$   
**assumes** [*simp*]: *ls-invar*  $\delta$   
**shows** *rqrm-invar* (*build-rqrm*  $\delta$ ) (**is** ?*T1*) **and**  
 $rqrm-prop (ls-\alpha \delta) (build-rqrm \delta)$  (**is** ?*T2*)

**proof** –  
**have** *rqrm-invar* (*build-rqrm*  $\delta$ )  $\wedge$   
 $(\forall q. ls-\alpha (rqrm-lookup (build-rqrm \delta) q) = \{r \in ls-\alpha \delta. q \in set (rhsq r)\})$   
**apply** (*unfold build-rqrm-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac*)  
 $I = \lambda it res. (rqrm-invar res)$   
 $\wedge (\forall q. ls-\alpha (rqrm-lookup res q)$   
 $= \{r \in ls-\alpha \delta - it. q \in set (rhsq r)\})$   
**in** *ls.iterate-rule-P*)  
– *Invar*  
**apply** *simp*  
– *Initial*  
**apply** (*simp add: hm-correct ls-correct rqrm-lookup-def rqrm-invar-def*)  
– *Step*  
**apply** (*rule-tac*)  
 $I = \lambda res itl itr.$   
 $(rqrm-invar res)$   
 $\wedge (\forall q. ls-\alpha (rqrm-lookup res q)$   
 $= \{r \in ls-\alpha \delta - it. q \in set (rhsq r)\}$   
 $\cup \{r. r = x \wedge q \in set itl\})$   
**in** *Misc.foldl-rule-P*)  
– *Initial*  
**apply** *simp*  
– *Step*  
**apply** (*intro conjI*)  
**apply** (*simp*)  
 $add: rqrm-invar-def rqrm-add-def rqrm-lookup-def hm-correct$   
 $ls-correct$   
 $split: option.split option.split-asm)$   
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*simp*)  
 $add: rqrm-add-def rqrm-lookup-def hm-correct ls-correct$   
 $split: option.split option.split-asm)$   
**apply** (*auto*) [1]  
– *Final*  
**apply** *auto* [1]  
– *Final*  
**apply** *simp*  
**done**

**thus** ?T1 ?T2 **by** (*simp-all add: rqrm-prop-def*)  
**qed**

— A state of the basic algorithm contains a set of discovered states, a worklist and a map from rules to the number of distinct states on its RHS that have not yet been discovered or are still on the worklist

**type-synonym** ('Q,'L) *brc-state*  
 = 'Q *hs* × 'Q *list* × (('Q,'L) *ta-rule*, *nat*) *hm*

— Abstraction to  $\alpha'$ -level:

**definition** *brc- $\alpha$*   
 :: ('Q::hashable,'L::hashable) *brc-state*  $\Rightarrow$  ('Q,'L) *br'-state*  
**where** *brc- $\alpha$*  ==  $\lambda(Q, W, rcm). (hs-\alpha\ Q, set\ W, hm-\alpha\ rcm)$

**definition** *brc-invar-add* :: ('Q::hashable,'L::hashable) *brc-state set*

**where**

*brc-invar-add* ==  $\{(Q, W, rcm).$

*hs-invar* *Q*  $\wedge$

*distinct* *W*  $\wedge$

*hm-invar* *rcm*

$\}\}$

**definition** *brc-invar*  $\delta$  == *brc-invar-add*  $\cap$   $\{s. brc-\alpha\ s \in br'-invar\ \delta\}$

**definition** *brc-cond* :: ('q::hashable,'l::hashable) *brc-state*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool*

**where** *brc-cond* ==  $\lambda(Q, W, rcm). W \neq []$

**definition** *brc-inner-step*

:: ('q,'l) *ta-rule*  $\Rightarrow$  ('q::hashable,'l::hashable) *brc-state*

$\Rightarrow$  ('q,'l) *brc-state*

**where**

*brc-inner-step* *r* ==  $\lambda(Q, W, rcm).$

*let* *c=the* (*hm-lookup* *r rcm*);

*rcm'* = *hm-update* *r* (*c*-(1::nat)) *rcm*;

*Q'* = (*if* *c*  $\leq$  1 *then* *hs-ins* (*lhs* *r*) *Q* *else* *Q*);

*W'* = (*if* *c*  $\leq$  1  $\wedge$   $\neg$  *hs-memb* (*lhs* *r*) *Q* *then* *lhs* *r*  $\#$  *W* *else* *W*) *in*  
 (*Q'*, *W'*, *rcm'*)

**definition** *brc-step*

:: ('q,('q,'l) *ta-rule* *ls*) *hm*

$\Rightarrow$  ('q::hashable,'l::hashable) *brc-state*

$\Rightarrow$  ('q,'l) *brc-state*

**where**

*brc-step* *rqrm* ==  $\lambda(Q, W, rcm).$

*ls-iterate**i* (*rqrm-lookup* *rqrm* (*hd* *W*)) ( $\lambda-. True$ ) *brc-inner-step*

(*Q*, *tl* *W*, *rcm*)

— Initial concrete state

**definition** *brc-ig* :: ('q,'l) ta-rule ls  $\Rightarrow$  'q::hashable hs  
**where** *brc-ig*  $\delta$  == *lh-set-xy.g-image-filter* ( $\lambda r$ .  
*if rhsq r = [] then Some (lhs r) else None*)  $\delta$

**definition** *brc-rcm-init*  
:: ('q::hashable,'l::hashable) ta-rule ls  
 $\Rightarrow$  (('q,'l) ta-rule,nat) hm  
**where** *brc-rcm-init*  $\delta$  ==  
*ls-iteratei*  $\delta$  ( $\lambda$ -. *True*)  
( $\lambda r$  res. *hm-update* r ((*length* (*remdups* (*rhsq* r)))) res)  
(*hm-empty* ()))

**definition** *brc-initial*  
:: ('q::hashable,'l::hashable) ta-rule ls  $\Rightarrow$  ('q,'l) brc-state  
**where** *brc-initial*  $\delta$  ==  
*let* *iq*=*brc-ig*  $\delta$  *in*  
(*iq*, *hs-to-list* (*iq*), *brc-rcm-init*  $\delta$ )

**definition** *brc-det-algo* *rqrm*  $\delta$  == (  
*dwa-cond* = *brc-cond*,  
*dwa-step* = *brc-step* *rqrm*,  
*dwa-initial* = *brc-initial*  $\delta$ ,  
*dwa-invar* = *brc-invar* (*ls- $\alpha$*   $\delta$ )  
)

— Additional facts needed from the abstract level

**lemma** *brc-inv-imp-WssQ*: *brc- $\alpha$*  (*Q*, *W*, *rcm*)  $\in$  *br'-invar*  $\delta$   $\implies$  *set* *W*  $\subseteq$  *hs- $\alpha$*  *Q*  
**by** (*auto simp add: brc- $\alpha$ -def br'-invar-def br'- $\alpha$ -def br-invar-def*)

**lemma** *brc-ig-correct*:  
**assumes** [*simp*]: *ls-invar*  $\delta$   
**shows** *hs-invar* (*brc-ig*  $\delta$ )  
*hs- $\alpha$*  (*brc-ig*  $\delta$ ) = *br-ig* (*ls- $\alpha$*   $\delta$ )  
**by** (*auto simp add: brc-ig-def br-ig-def lh-set-xy.image-filter-correct*)

**lemma** *brc-rcm-init-correct*:  
**assumes** *INV*[*simp*]: *ls-invar*  $\delta$   
**shows**  $r \in$  *ls- $\alpha$*   $\delta$   
 $\implies$  *hm- $\alpha$*  (*brc-rcm-init*  $\delta$ ) *r* = *Some* ((*card* (*set* (*rhsq* *r*))))  
(**is** -  $\implies$  ?*T1* *r*) **and**  
*hm-invar* (*brc-rcm-init*  $\delta$ ) (**is** ?*T2*)

**proof** —

**have** *G*: ( $\forall r \in$  *ls- $\alpha$*   $\delta$ . ?*T1* *r*)  $\wedge$  ?*T2*  
**apply** (*unfold brc-rcm-init-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac*)  
*I*= $\lambda$ *it* res. *hm-invar* res  
 $\wedge$  ( $\forall r \in$  *ls- $\alpha$*   $\delta$  - *it*. *hm- $\alpha$*  res *r* = *Some* ((*card* (*set* (*rhsq* *r*))))))  
**in** *ls.iterate-rule-P*  
— *Invar*

```

apply simp
  — Init
apply (auto simp add: hm-correct) [1]
  — Step
apply (rule conjI)
apply (simp add: hm.update-correct)

apply (simp only: hm-correct hs-correct INV)
apply (rule ballI)
apply (case-tac r=x)
apply (auto
  simp add: length-remdups-card
  intro!: arg-cong[where f=card]) [1]
apply simp
  — Final
apply simp
done
from G show ?T2 by auto
fix r
assume r ∈ ls-α δ
thus ?T1 r using G by auto
qed

```

```

lemma brc-inner-step-br'-desc:
  [ (Q, W, rcm) ∈ brc-invar δ ] ⇒ brc-α (brc-inner-step r (Q, W, rcm)) = (
    if the (hm-α rcm r) ≤ 1 then
      insert (lhs r) (hs-α Q)
    else hs-α Q,
    if the (hm-α rcm r) ≤ 1 ∧ (lhs r) ∉ hs-α Q then
      insert (lhs r) (set W)
    else (set W),
    ((hm-α rcm)(r ↦ the (hm-α rcm r) - 1))
  )
by (simp
  add: brc-invar-def brc-invar-add-def brc-α-def brc-inner-step-def Let-def
  hs-correct hm-correct)

```

```

lemma brc-step-invar:
assumes RQRM: rqrm-invar rqrm
shows [ Σ ∈ brc-invar-add; brc-α Σ ∈ br'-invar δ; brc-cond Σ ]
  ⇒ (brc-step rqrm Σ) ∈ brc-invar-add
apply (cases Σ)
apply (simp add: brc-step-def)
apply (rule-tac I=λit (Q, W, rcm). (Q, W, rcm) ∈ brc-invar-add ∧ set W ⊆ hs-α
Q
  in ls.iterate-rule-P)
apply (simp add: RQRM[unfolded rqrm-invar-def])
apply (case-tac b)
apply (simp add: brc-invar-add-def distinct-tl brc-cond-def)

```

```

apply (auto simp add: brc-invar-add-def distinct-tl brc-cond-def
          dest!: brc-inv-imp-WssQ) [1]
apply (case-tac  $\sigma$ )
apply (auto simp add: brc-invar-add-def br-invar-def brc-inner-step-def
          Let-def hs-correct hm-correct) [1]
apply (case-tac  $\sigma$ )
apply simp
done

```

**lemma** *brc-step-abs*:

```

assumes RQRM: rqrm-invar rqrm    rqrm-prop  $\delta$  rqrm
assumes A:  $\Sigma \in$  brc-invar  $\delta$     brc-cond  $\Sigma$ 
shows (brc- $\alpha$   $\Sigma$ , brc- $\alpha$  (brc-step rqrm  $\Sigma$ ))  $\in$  br'-step  $\delta$ 
proof -
obtain Q W rcm where [simp]:  $\Sigma = (Q, W, rcm)$  by (cases  $\Sigma$ ) auto
from A show ?thesis
apply (simp add: brc-step-def)
apply (rule
          br'-inner-step-proof[OF ls.v1-iteratei-impl,
          where cinvar= $\lambda$ it (Q, W, rcm). (Q, W, rcm)  $\in$  brc-invar-add
           $\wedge$  set W  $\subseteq$  hs- $\alpha$  Q and
          q=hd W])
apply (case-tac W)
apply (auto simp add: brc-cond-def brc-invar-add-def brc-invar-def
          dest!: brc-inv-imp-WssQ) [2]
prefer 6
apply (simp add: brc- $\alpha$ -def)
apply (case-tac  $\Sigma$ )
apply (auto
          simp add: brc-invar-def brc-invar-add-def brc-inner-step-def
          Let-def hm-correct hs-correct) [1]
apply (auto
          simp add: brc-invar-add-def brc-inner-step-def brc- $\alpha$ -def
          br'-inner-step-def Let-def hm-correct hs-correct) [1]
apply (simp add: RQRM[unfolded rqrm-invar-def])
apply (simp add: rqrm-propD[OF RQRM(2)])
apply (case-tac W)
apply (simp-all add: brc- $\alpha$ -def brc-cond-def brc-invar-def) [2]
apply (case-tac W)
apply (simp-all add: brc- $\alpha$ -def brc-cond-def brc-invar-def
          brc-invar-add-def) [2]
done
qed

```

**lemma** *brc-initial-invar*:  $ls$ -invar  $\delta \implies (brc$ -initial  $\delta) \in$  brc-invar-add  
**by** (simp  
 add: brc-invar-add-def brc-initial-def brc-*iq*-correct Let-def  
 brc-rcm-init-correct hs-correct)

```

lemma brc-cond-abs: brc-cond  $\Sigma \longleftrightarrow (brc-\alpha \Sigma) \in br'-cond$ 
  apply (cases  $\Sigma$ )
  apply (simp add: brc-cond-def br'-cond-def brc- $\alpha$ -def)
  done

lemma brc-initial-abs:
  ls-invar  $\delta \implies brc-\alpha (brc-initial \delta) \in br'-initial (ls-\alpha \delta)$ 
  by (auto
    simp add: brc-initial-def Let-def brc- $\alpha$ -def brc-iq-correct
      brc-rcm-init-correct hs-correct
    intro: br'-initial.intros)

lemma brc-pref-br':
  assumes RQRM[simp]: rqrm-invar rqrm    rqrm-prop (ls- $\alpha$   $\delta$ ) rqrm
  assumes INV[simp]: ls-invar  $\delta$ 
  shows wa-precise-refine (det-wa-wa (brc-det-algo rqrm  $\delta$ ))
    (br'-algo (ls- $\alpha$   $\delta$ ))
    brc- $\alpha$ 
  apply (unfold-locales)
  apply (simp-all add: brc-det-algo-def br'-algo-def det-wa-wa-def)
  apply (simp add: brc-cond-abs)
  apply (auto simp add: brc-step-abs[OF RQRM]) [1]
  apply (simp add: brc-initial-abs)
  apply (auto simp add: brc-invar-def) [1]
  apply (simp add: brc-cond-abs)
  done

lemma brc-while-algo:
  assumes RQRM[simp]: rqrm-invar rqrm    rqrm-prop (ls- $\alpha$   $\delta$ ) rqrm
  assumes INV[simp]: ls-invar  $\delta$ 
  shows while-algo (det-wa-wa (brc-det-algo rqrm  $\delta$ ))
  proof –
  from brc-pref-br'[OF RQRM INV] interpret
    ref: wa-precise-refine (det-wa-wa (brc-det-algo rqrm  $\delta$ ))
      (br'-algo (ls- $\alpha$   $\delta$ ))
      brc- $\alpha$  .
  show ?thesis
    apply (rule ref.wa-intro)
    apply (simp add: br'-while-algo)
    apply (simp-all add: det-wa-wa-def brc-det-algo-def br'-algo-def)
    apply (simp add: brc-invar-def)
    apply (auto simp add: brc-step-invar) [1]
    apply (simp add: brc-initial-invar)
  done
qed

lemmas brc-det-while-algo =
  det-while-algo-intro[OF brc-while-algo]

```

**lemma** *fst-brc- $\alpha$* :  $\text{fst } (\text{brc-}\alpha \ s) = \text{hs-}\alpha \ (\text{fst } s)$   
**by** (*cases s*) (*simp add: brc- $\alpha$ -def*)

**lemmas** *brc-invar-final* =  
*wa-precise-refine.transfer-correctness*[*OF*  
*brc-pref-br' br'-invar-final, unfolded fst-brc- $\alpha$* ]

**definition** *hta-bwd-reduce H* ==  
*let rgrm = build-rgrm (hta- $\delta$  H) in*  
*hta-reduce*  
*H*  
*(fst (while brc-cond (brc-step rgrm) (brc-initial (hta- $\delta$  H))))*

**theorem** (*in hashedTa*) *hta-bwd-reduce-correct*:  
**shows** *hta- $\alpha$  (hta-bwd-reduce H)*  
= *ta-reduce (hta- $\alpha$  H) (b-accessible (ls- $\alpha$  (hta- $\delta$  H)))* (**is** ?*T1*)  
*hashedTa (hta-bwd-reduce H)* (**is** ?*T2*)

**proof** –

**interpret** *det-while-algo (brc-det-algo (build-rgrm  $\delta$ )  $\delta$ )*  
**by** (*rule brc-det-while-algo*)  
(*simp-all add: build-rgrm-correct*)

**have** *LC: (while brc-cond (brc-step (build-rgrm  $\delta$ ) (brc-initial  $\delta$ )) = loop*  
**by** (*unfold loop-def*)  
(*simp add: brc-det-algo-def*)

**from** *while-proof*'[*OF brc-invar-final*] **have**  
*G1: hs- $\alpha$  (fst loop) = b-accessible (ls- $\alpha$   $\delta$ )*  
**by** (*simp add: build-rgrm-correct*)  
**have** *G2: loop  $\in$  brc-invar (ls- $\alpha$   $\delta$ )*  
**by** (*rule while-proof*)  
(*simp add: brc-det-algo-def*)  
**hence** [*simp*]: *hs-invar (fst loop)*  
**by** (*cases loop*)  
(*simp add: brc-invar-def brc-invar-add-def*)

**show** ?*T1* ?*T2*  
**by** (*simp-all add: hta-bwd-reduce-def LC hta-reduce-correct G1*)

qed

### 5.9.1 Emptiness Check with Witness Computation

**definition** *brec-construct-witness*  
:: (*'q::hashable, 'l::hashable tree*) *hm*  $\Rightarrow$  (*'q, 'l*) *ta-rule*  $\Rightarrow$  *'l tree*  
**where** *brec-construct-witness Qm r* ==



*NODE* (*rhs*l *r*) (*List.map* ( $\lambda q. \text{the } (\text{hm-lookup } q \text{ } Qm)$ ) (*rhs*q *r*))

**lemma** *brec-construct-witness-correct*:

$\llbracket \text{hm-invar } Qm \rrbracket \implies$   
*brec-construct-witness* *Qm r* = *construct-witness* (*hm- $\alpha$*  *Qm*) *r*  
**by** (*auto*  
*simp add: construct-witness-def brec-construct-witness-def hm-correct*)

**type-synonym** (*'Q, 'L*) *brec-state*

= (*'Q, 'L tree*) *hm*  
 $\times$  *'Q fifo*  
 $\times$  (*'Q, 'L ta-rule, nat*) *hm*  
 $\times$  *'Q option*)

— Abstractions

**definition** *brec- $\alpha$*

$:: ('Q::\text{hashable}, 'L::\text{hashable}) \text{brec-state} \Rightarrow ('Q, 'L) \text{brw-state}$   
**where** *brec- $\alpha$*  ==  $\lambda(Q, W, rcm, f). (\text{hm-}\alpha \text{ } Q, \text{set } (\text{fifo-}\alpha \text{ } W), (\text{hm-}\alpha \text{ } rcm))$

**definition** *brec-inner-step*

$:: 'q \text{hs} \Rightarrow ('q, 'l) \text{ta-rule}$   
 $\Rightarrow ('q::\text{hashable}, 'l::\text{hashable}) \text{brec-state}$   
 $\Rightarrow ('q, 'l) \text{brec-state}$   
**where** *brec-inner-step* *Qi r* ==  $\lambda(Q, W, rcm, \text{quit})$ .  
*let* *c* = *the* (*hm-lookup* *r rcm*);  
*cond* = *c*  $\leq 1 \wedge \text{hm-lookup } (\text{lhs } r) \text{ } Q = \text{None}$ ;  
*rcm'* = *hm-update* *r* (*c* - (*1* :: *nat*)) *rcm*;  
*Q'* = ( *if cond* *then*  
*hm-update* (*lhs r*) (*brec-construct-witness* *Q r*) *Q*  
*else Q*);  
*W'* = (*if cond* *then* *fifo-enqueue* (*lhs r*) *W* *else W*);  
*quit'* = (*if c*  $\leq 1 \wedge \text{hs-memb } (\text{lhs } r) \text{ } Qi$  *then* *Some* (*lhs r*) *else quit*)  
*in*  
(*Q', W', rcm', quit'*)

**definition** *brec-step*

$:: ('q, ('q, 'l) \text{ta-rule } ls) \text{hm} \Rightarrow 'q \text{hs}$   
 $\Rightarrow ('q::\text{hashable}, 'l::\text{hashable}) \text{brec-state}$   
 $\Rightarrow ('q, 'l) \text{brec-state}$   
**where** *brec-step* *rqr*m *Qi* ==  $\lambda(Q, W, rcm, \text{quit})$ .  
*let* (*q, W'*) = *fifo-dequeue* *W* *in*  
*ls-iteratei* (*rqr*m-*lookup* *rqr*m *q*) ( $\lambda\cdot. \text{True}$ )  
(*brec-inner-step* *Qi*) (*Q, W', rcm, quit*)

**definition** *brec-igm*

$:: ('q::\text{hashable}, 'l::\text{hashable}) \text{ta-rule } ls \Rightarrow ('q, 'l \text{tree}) \text{hm}$   
**where** *brec-igm*  $\delta$  ==

$ls\text{-iteratei } \delta \ (\lambda\cdot. \text{True}) \ (\lambda r \ m. \text{if } rhsq \ r = [] \text{ then}$   
 $\quad hm\text{-update } (lhs \ r) \ (NODE \ (rhsl \ r) \ [])) \ m$   
 $\quad \text{else } m)$   
 $(hm\text{-empty } ())$

**definition** *brec-initial*

$:: 'q \ hs \Rightarrow ('q::hashable, 'l::hashable) \ ta\text{-rule } ls$   
 $\quad \Rightarrow ('q, 'l) \ brec\text{-state}$   
**where** *brec-initial*  $Qi \ \delta ==$   
 $let \ iq = brc\text{-iq } \delta \ in$   
 $( \ brec\text{-iqm } \delta,$   
 $\quad hs\text{-to-fifo.g-set-to-listr } iq,$   
 $\quad brc\text{-rcm-init } \delta,$   
 $\quad hh\text{-set-xx.g-disjoint-witness } iq \ Qi)$

**definition** *brec-cond*

$:: ('q, 'l) \ brec\text{-state} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$   
**where** *brec-cond*  $== \lambda(Q, W, rcm, qwit). \neg \text{fifo-isEmpty } W \wedge qwit = \text{None}$

**definition** *brec-invar-add*

$:: 'Q \ set \Rightarrow ('Q::hashable, 'L::hashable) \ brec\text{-state } set$   
**where**  
*brec-invar-add*  $Qi == \{(Q, W, rcm, qwit).$   
 $\quad hm\text{-invar } Q \wedge$   
 $\quad distinct \ (fifo\text{-}\alpha \ W) \wedge$   
 $\quad hm\text{-invar } rcm \wedge$   
 $( \ case \ qwit \ of$   
 $\quad \text{None} \Rightarrow Qi \cap dom \ (hm\text{-}\alpha \ Q) = \{\} \mid$   
 $\quad \text{Some } q \Rightarrow q \in Qi \cap dom \ (hm\text{-}\alpha \ Q))\}$

**definition** *brec-invar*  $Qi \ \delta == brec\text{-invar-add } Qi \cap \{s. \text{brec-}\alpha \ s \in brw\text{-invar } \delta\}$

**definition** *brec-invar-inner*  $Qi ==$

*brec-invar-add*  $Qi \cap \{(Q, W, -, -). \text{set } (fifo\text{-}\alpha \ W) \subseteq dom \ (hm\text{-}\alpha \ Q)\}$

**lemma** *brec-invar-cons:*

$\Sigma \in brec\text{-invar } Qi \ \delta \Longrightarrow \Sigma \in brec\text{-invar-inner } Qi$

**apply** (*cases*  $\Sigma$ )

**apply** (*simp add:* *brec-invar-def brw-invar-def br'-invar-def br-invar-def*  
*brec-}\alpha-def brw-}\alpha-def br'-}\alpha-def brec-invar-inner-def*)

**done**

**lemma** *brec-brw-invar-cons:*

$\text{brec-}\alpha \ \Sigma \in brw\text{-invar } Qi \Longrightarrow \text{set } (fifo\text{-}\alpha \ (fst \ (snd \ \Sigma))) \subseteq dom \ (hm\text{-}\alpha \ (fst \ \Sigma))$

**apply** (*cases*  $\Sigma$ )

**apply** (*simp add:* *brec-invar-def brw-invar-def br'-invar-def br-invar-def*  
*brec-}\alpha-def brw-}\alpha-def br'-}\alpha-def*)

**done**

**definition** *brec-det-algo* *rgrm Qi δ* == (  
*dwa-cond*=*brec-cond*,  
*dwa-step*=*brec-step rgrm Qi*,  
*dwa-initial*=*brec-initial Qi δ*,  
*dwa-invar*=*brec-invar (hs-α Qi) (ls-α δ)*  
>)

**lemma** *brec-igq-correct'*:  
**assumes** *INV[simp]: ls-invar δ*  
**shows**  
*dom (hm-α (brec-igq δ)) = {lhs r | r. r ∈ ls-α δ ∧ rhsq r = []} (is ?T1)*  
*witness-prop (ls-α δ) (hm-α (brec-igq δ)) (is ?T2)*  
*hm-invar (brec-igq δ) (is ?T3)*  
**proof** –  
**have** *?T1 ∧ ?T2 ∧ ?T3*  
**apply** (*unfold brec-igq-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac*)  
*I = λit m. hm-invar m*  
*∧ dom (hm-α m) = {lhs r | r. r ∈ ls-α δ – it ∧ rhsq r = []}*  
*∧ witness-prop (ls-α δ) (hm-α m)*  
**in** *ls.iterate-rule-P*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*auto simp add: hm-correct witness-prop-def*) [1]  
**apply** (*auto simp add: hm-correct witness-prop-def*) [1]  
**apply** (*case-tac x*)  
**apply** (*auto intro: accs.intros*) [1]  
**apply** *simp*  
**done**  
**thus** *?T1 ?T2 ?T3* **by** *auto*  
**qed**

**lemma** *brec-igq-correct*:  
**assumes** *INV[simp]: ls-invar δ*  
**shows** *hm-α (brec-igq δ) ∈ brw-ig (ls-α δ)*  
**proof** –  
**have** (*∀ q t. hm-α (brec-igq δ) q = Some t*  
*→ (∃ r ∈ ls-α δ. rhsq r = [] ∧ q = lhs r ∧ t = NODE (rhsl r) [])*)  
*∧ (∀ r ∈ ls-α δ. rhsq r = [] → hm-α (brec-igq δ) (lhs r) ≠ None)*  
**apply** (*unfold brec-igq-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac I = λit m. (*  
*(hm-invar m) ∧*  
*(∀ q t. hm-α m q = Some t*  
*→ (∃ r ∈ ls-α δ. rhsq r = [] ∧ q = lhs r ∧ t = NODE (rhsl r) [])) ∧*  
*(∀ r ∈ ls-α δ – it. rhsq r = [] → hm-α m (lhs r) ≠ None)*  
*)*  
**in** *ls.iterate-rule-P*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*simp add: hm-correct*)

```

  apply (auto simp add: hm-correct) [1]
  apply (auto simp add: hm-correct) [1]
done
thus ?thesis by (blast intro: brw-iq.intros)
qed

```

```

lemma brec-inner-step-brw-desc:
  [[  $\Sigma \in \text{brec-invar-inner } (hs-\alpha \ Qi)$  ]]
   $\implies (\text{brec-}\alpha \ \Sigma, \text{brec-}\alpha \ (\text{brec-inner-step } Qi \ r \ \Sigma)) \in \text{brw-inner-step } r$ 
  apply (cases  $\Sigma$ )
  apply (rule brw-inner-step.intros)
  apply (simp only: )
  apply (simp only: brec- $\alpha$ -def split-conv)
  apply (simp only: brec-inner-step-def brec- $\alpha$ -def Let-def split-conv)
  apply (auto
    simp add: brec-invar-inner-def brec-invar-add-def brec- $\alpha$ -def
      brec-inner-step-def
      Let-def hs-correct hm-correct fifo-correct
      brec-construct-witness-correct)
done

```

```

lemma brec-step-invar:
  assumes  $RQRM: \text{rqrm-invar } rqrm \quad \text{rqrm-prop } \delta \ rqrm$ 
  assumes [simp]:  $hs\text{-invar } Qi$ 
  shows [[  $\Sigma \in \text{brec-invar-add } (hs-\alpha \ Qi); \text{brec-}\alpha \ \Sigma \in \text{brw-invar } \delta; \text{brec-cond } \Sigma$  ]]
     $\implies (\text{brec-step } rqrm \ Qi \ \Sigma) \in \text{brec-invar-add } (hs-\alpha \ Qi)$ 
  apply (frule brec-brw-invar-cons)
  apply (cases  $\Sigma$ )
  apply (simp add: brec-step-def fifo-correct)
  apply (case-tac  $fifo-\alpha \ b$ )
  apply (simp
    add: brec-invar-def distinct-tl brec-cond-def fifo-correct
  )
  apply (rule-tac  $s=b$  in  $fifo.removeE$ )
  apply simp
  apply simp
  apply simp

  apply (rule-tac
     $I=\lambda it \ (Q, W, rcm, qwit). (Q, W, rcm, qwit) \in \text{brec-invar-add } (hs-\alpha \ Qi)$ 
     $\wedge \text{set } (fifo-\alpha \ W) \subseteq \text{dom } (hm-\alpha \ Q)$ 
    in  $ls.iterate\text{-rule-}P$ )
  apply simp
  apply (simp
    add: brec-invar-def distinct-tl brec-cond-def fifo-correct
  )
  apply (simp
    add: brec-invar-def brec-invar-add-def distinct-tl brec-cond-def
  )

```

```

    fifo-correct)
apply (case-tac  $\sigma$ )
apply (auto
  simp add: brec-invar-add-def brec-inner-step-def Let-def hs-correct
    hm-correct fifo-correct split: option.split-asm) [1]
apply (case-tac  $\sigma$ )
apply simp
done

```

**lemma** *brec-step-abs*:

```

assumes RQRM: rqrm-invar rqrm    rqrm-prop  $\delta$  rqrm
assumes INV[simp]: hs-invar Qi
assumes A':  $\Sigma \in$  brec-invar (hs- $\alpha$  Qi)  $\delta$ 
assumes COND: brec-cond  $\Sigma$ 
shows (brec- $\alpha$   $\Sigma$ , brec- $\alpha$  (brec-step rqrm Qi  $\Sigma$ ))  $\in$  brw-step  $\delta$ 

```

**proof** –

```

from A' have A: (brec- $\alpha$   $\Sigma$ )  $\in$  brw-invar  $\delta$      $\Sigma \in$  brec-invar-add (hs- $\alpha$  Qi)
  by (simp-all add: brec-invar-def)

```

```

obtain Q W rcm quit where [simp]:  $\Sigma = (Q, W, rcm, quit)$  by (cases  $\Sigma$ ) blast
from A COND show ?thesis

```

```

  apply (simp add: brec-step-def fifo-correct)
  apply (case-tac fifo- $\alpha$  W)
  apply (simp
    add: brec-invar-def distinct-tl brec-cond-def fifo-correct
  )
  apply (rule-tac s=W in fifo.removeE)
  apply simp
  apply simp
  apply simp

```

```

apply (rule brw-inner-step-proof[
  OF ls.v1-iteratei-impl,
  where cinvar= $\lambda$ it  $\Sigma$ .  $\Sigma \in$  brec-invar-inner (hs- $\alpha$  Qi) and
    q=hd (fifo- $\alpha$  W)])

```

```

apply assumption
apply (frule brec-brw-invar-cons)
apply (simp-all
  add: brec-cond-def brec-invar-add-def fifo-correct
    brec-invar-inner-def) [1]

```

**prefer** 6

```

apply (simp add: brec- $\alpha$ -def)
apply (case-tac  $\Sigma$ )
apply (auto
  simp add: brec-invar-add-def brec-inner-step-def Let-def hm-correct
    hs-correct fifo-correct brec-invar-inner-def
  split: option.split-asm) [1]
apply (blast intro: brec-inner-step-brw-desc)
apply (simp add: RQRM[unfolded rqrm-invar-def])

```

```

apply (simp
  add: rqrm-propD[OF RQRM(2)] fifo-correct)
apply (simp-all
  add: brec- $\alpha$ -def brec-cond-def brec-invar-def fifo-correct) [1]
apply (simp-all
  add: brec- $\alpha$ -def brec-cond-def brec-invar-add-def fifo-correct) [1]
done
qed

lemma brec-invar-initial:
   $\llbracket ls\text{-invar } \delta; hs\text{-invar } Qi \rrbracket \implies (brec\text{-initial } Qi \ \delta) \in brec\text{-invar-add } (hs\text{-}\alpha \ Qi)$ 
apply (auto
  simp add: brec-invar-add-def brec-initial-def brc-iq-correct
  brec-igm-correct' hs-correct hs.isEmpty-correct Let-def
  brc-rcm-init-correct br-iq-def
  hh-set-xx.disjoint-witness-correct
  hs-to-fifo.g-set-to-listr-correct
  split: option.split)
apply (auto simp add: brc-iq-correct
  hh-set-xx.disjoint-witness-None br-iq-def) [1]

apply (drule hh-set-xx.disjoint-witness-correct[simplified])
apply simp

apply (drule hh-set-xx.disjoint-witness-correct[simplified])
apply (simp add: brc-iq-correct br-iq-def)
done

lemma brec-cond-abs:
   $\llbracket \Sigma \in brec\text{-invar } Qi \ \delta \rrbracket \implies brec\text{-cond } \Sigma \longleftrightarrow (brec\text{-}\alpha \ \Sigma) \in brw\text{-cond } Qi$ 
apply (cases  $\Sigma$ )
apply (auto
  simp add: brec-cond-def brw-cond-def brec- $\alpha$ -def brec-invar-def
  brec-invar-add-def fifo-correct
  split: option.split-asm)
done

lemma brec-initial-abs:
   $\llbracket ls\text{-invar } \delta; hs\text{-invar } Qi \rrbracket$ 
   $\implies brec\text{-}\alpha \ (brec\text{-initial } Qi \ \delta) \in brw\text{-initial } (ls\text{-}\alpha \ \delta)$ 
by (auto simp add: brec-initial-def Let-def brec- $\alpha$ -def
  brc-iq-correct brc-rcm-init-correct brec-igm-correct
  br-iq-def fifo-correct hs-to-fifo.g-set-to-listr-correct
  intro: brw-initial.intros[unfolded br-iq-def])

lemma brec-pref-brw:
assumes RQRM[simp]: rqrm-invar rqrm rqrm-prop (ls- $\alpha$   $\delta$ ) rqrm
assumes INV[simp]: ls-invar  $\delta$  hs-invar Qi
shows wa-precise-refine (det-wa-wa (brec-det-algo rqrm Qi  $\delta$ ))

```

```

      (brw-algo (hs- $\alpha$  Qi) (ls- $\alpha$   $\delta$ ))
      brec- $\alpha$ 
apply (unfold-locales)
apply (simp-all add: det-wa-wa-def brec-det-algo-def brw-algo-def)
apply (auto simp add: brec-cond-abs brec-step-abs brec-initial-abs)
apply (simp add: brec-invar-def)
done

lemma brec-while-algo:
  assumes RQRM[simp]: rqrm-invar rqrm    rqrm-prop (ls- $\alpha$   $\delta$ ) rqrm
  assumes INV[simp]: ls-invar  $\delta$     hs-invar Qi
  shows while-algo (det-wa-wa (brec-det-algo rqrm Qi  $\delta$ ))
proof –
  interpret ref:
    wa-precise-refine (det-wa-wa (brec-det-algo rqrm Qi  $\delta$ ))
      (brw-algo (hs- $\alpha$  Qi) (ls- $\alpha$   $\delta$ ))
      brec- $\alpha$ 
    using brec-pref-brw[OF RQRM INV] .

  show ?thesis
    apply (rule ref.wa-intro)
    apply (simp add: brw-while-algo)
    apply (simp-all add: det-wa-wa-def brec-det-algo-def brw-algo-def)
    apply (simp add: brec-invar-def)
    apply (auto simp add: brec-step-invar[OF RQRM INV(2)]) [1]
    apply (simp add: brec-invar-initial) [1]
    done
qed

lemma fst-brec- $\alpha$ : fst (brec- $\alpha$   $\Sigma$ ) = hm- $\alpha$  (fst  $\Sigma$ )
  by (cases  $\Sigma$ ) (simp add: brec- $\alpha$ -def)

lemmas brec-invar-final =
  wa-precise-refine.transfer-correctness[
    OF brec-pref-brw brw-invar-final,
    unfolded fst-brec- $\alpha$ ]

lemmas brec-det-algo = det-while-algo-intro[OF brec-while-algo]

definition hta-is-empty-witness H ==
  let rqrm = build-rqrm (hta- $\delta$  H);
      (Q,-,quit) = (while brec-cond (brec-step rqrm (hta-Qi H))
        (brec-initial (hta-Qi H) (hta- $\delta$  H)))
  in
  case quit of
    None  $\Rightarrow$  None |
    Some q  $\Rightarrow$  (hm-lookup q Q)

```

**theorem** (in *hashedTa*) *hta-is-empty-witness-correct*:  
**shows** [*rule-format*]: *hta-is-empty-witness H = Some t*  
 $\longrightarrow t \in ta\text{-lang } (hta\text{-}\alpha H)$  (is ?T1)  
*hta-is-empty-witness H = None*  $\longrightarrow ta\text{-lang } (hta\text{-}\alpha H) = \{\}$  (is ?T2)  
**proof** –

**interpret** *det-while-algo* (*brec-det-algo* (*build-rqrm*  $\delta$ ) *Qi*  $\delta$ )  
**by** (*rule brec-det-algo*)  
(*simp-all add: build-rqrm-correct*)

**have** *LC*:  
(*while brec-cond* (*brec-step* (*build-rqrm*  $\delta$ ) *Qi*) (*brec-initial* *Qi*  $\delta$ )) = *loop*  
**by** (*unfold loop-def*)  
(*simp add: brec-det-algo-def*)

**from** *while-proof*'[*OF brec-invar-final*] **have** *X*:  
 $hs\text{-}\alpha Qi \cap dom (hm\text{-}\alpha (fst\ loop)) = \{\}$   
 $\longleftrightarrow (hs\text{-}\alpha Qi \cap b\text{-accessible } (ls\text{-}\alpha \delta) = \{\})$   
*witness-prop* (*ls*- $\alpha$   $\delta$ ) (*hm*- $\alpha$  (*fst loop*))  
**by** (*simp-all add: build-rqrm-correct*)

**obtain** *Q W rcm quit* **where**  
[*simp*]: *loop = (Q, W, rcm, quit)*  
**by** (*case-tac loop*) *blast*

**from** *loop-invar* **have** *I*: *loop*  $\in$  *brec-invar* (*hs*- $\alpha$  *Qi*) (*ls*- $\alpha$   $\delta$ )  
**by** (*simp add: brec-det-algo-def*)

**hence** *INVARS*[*simp*]: *hm-invar Q hm-invar rcm*  
**by** (*simp-all add: brec-invar-def brec-invar-add-def*)

{  
**assume** *C*: *hta-is-empty-witness H = Some t*  
**then obtain** *q* **where**  
[*simp*]: *quit = Some q* **and**  
*LUQ*: *hm-lookup q Q = Some t*  
**by** (*unfold hta-is-empty-witness-def*)  
(*simp add: LC split: option.split-asm*)  
**from** *LUQ* **have** *QqF*: *hm*- $\alpha$  *Q q = Some t* **by** (*simp add: hm-correct*)  
**from** *I* **have** *QMEM*:  $q \in hs\text{-}\alpha Qi$   
**by** (*simp-all add: brec-invar-def brec-invar-add-def*)  
**moreover from** *witness-propD*[*OF X(2)*] *QqF* **have** *accs* (*ls*- $\alpha$   $\delta$ ) *t q* **by** *simp*  
**ultimately have**  $t \in ta\text{-lang } (hta\text{-}\alpha H)$   
**by** (*auto simp add: ta-lang-def hta- $\alpha$ -def*)  
} **moreover** {  
**assume** *C*: *hta-is-empty-witness H = None*  
**hence** *DJ*:  $hs\text{-}\alpha Qi \cap dom (hm\text{-}\alpha Q) = \{\}$  **using** *I*  
**by** (*auto simp add: hta-is-empty-witness-def LC brec-invar-def*  
*brec-invar-add-def hm-correct*  
*split: option.split-asm*)



```

with  $X$  have  $hs-\alpha$   $Q_i \cap b\text{-accessible}$   $(ls-\alpha \delta) = \{\}$ 
  by (simp add: brec- $\alpha$ -def)
with empty-if-no-b-accessible[of  $hta-\alpha$   $H$ ] have  $ta\text{-lang}$   $(hta-\alpha H) = \{\}$ 
  by (simp add: hta- $\alpha$ -def)
} ultimately show  $?T1$   $?T2$  by auto
qed

```

## 5.10 Interface for Natural Number States and Symbols

The library-interface is statically instantiated to use natural numbers as both, states and symbols.

This interface is easier to use from ML and OCaml, because there is no overhead with typeclass emulation.

```
type-synonym htai =  $(nat, nat)$  hashedTa
```

```

definition htai-mem ::  $- \Rightarrow hta \Rightarrow bool$ 
  where htai-mem == hta-mem
definition htai-prod ::  $hta \Rightarrow hta \Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htai-prod  $H1 H2$  == hta-reindex (hta-prod  $H1 H2$ )
definition htai-prodWR ::  $hta \Rightarrow hta \Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htai-prodWR  $H1 H2$  == hta-reindex (hta-prodWR  $H1 H2$ )
definition htai-union ::  $hta \Rightarrow hta \Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htai-union  $H1 H2$  == hta-reindex (hta-union  $H1 H2$ )
definition htai-empty ::  $unit \Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htai-empty == hta-empty
definition htai-add-qi ::  $- \Rightarrow hta \Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htai-add-qi == hta-add-qi
definition htai-add-rule ::  $- \Rightarrow hta \Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htai-add-rule == hta-add-rule
definition htai-bwd-reduce ::  $hta \Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htai-bwd-reduce == hta-bwd-reduce
definition htai-is-empty-witness ::  $hta \Rightarrow -$ 
  where htai-is-empty-witness == hta-is-empty-witness
definition htai-ensure-idx-f ::  $hta \Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htai-ensure-idx-f == hta-ensure-idx-f
definition htai-ensure-idx-s ::  $hta \Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htai-ensure-idx-s == hta-ensure-idx-s
definition htai-ensure-idx-sf ::  $hta \Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htai-ensure-idx-sf == hta-ensure-idx-sf

definition htaip-prod ::  $hta \Rightarrow hta \Rightarrow (nat * nat, nat)$  hashedTa
  where htaip-prod == hta-prod
definition htaip-prodWR ::  $hta \Rightarrow hta \Rightarrow (nat * nat, nat)$  hashedTa
  where htaip-prodWR == hta-prodWR
definition htaip-reindex ::  $(nat * nat, nat)$  hashedTa  $\Rightarrow hta$ 
  where htaip-reindex == hta-reindex

```

```
locale htai = hashedTa +
```

```

constrains  $H :: \text{htai}$ 
begin
  lemmas  $\text{htai-mem-correct} = \text{hta-mem-correct}[\text{folded } \text{htai-mem-def}]$ 

  lemma  $\text{htai-empty-correct}[\text{simp}]$ :
     $\text{hta-}\alpha (\text{htai-empty } ()) = \text{ta-empty}$ 
     $\text{hashedTa } (\text{htai-empty } ())$ 
  by ( $\text{auto simp add: htai-empty-def hta-empty-correct}$ )

  lemmas  $\text{htai-add-qi-correct} = \text{hta-add-qi-correct}[\text{folded } \text{htai-add-qi-def}]$ 
  lemmas  $\text{htai-add-rule-correct} = \text{hta-add-rule-correct}[\text{folded } \text{htai-add-rule-def}]$ 

  lemmas  $\text{htai-bwd-reduce-correct} =$ 
     $\text{hta-bwd-reduce-correct}[\text{folded } \text{htai-bwd-reduce-def}]$ 
  lemmas  $\text{htai-is-empty-witness-correct} =$ 
     $\text{hta-is-empty-witness-correct}[\text{folded } \text{htai-is-empty-witness-def}]$ 

  lemmas  $\text{htai-ensure-idx-f-correct} =$ 
     $\text{hta-ensure-idx-f-correct}[\text{folded } \text{htai-ensure-idx-f-def}]$ 
  lemmas  $\text{htai-ensure-idx-s-correct} =$ 
     $\text{hta-ensure-idx-s-correct}[\text{folded } \text{htai-ensure-idx-s-def}]$ 
  lemmas  $\text{htai-ensure-idx-sf-correct} =$ 
     $\text{hta-ensure-idx-sf-correct}[\text{folded } \text{htai-ensure-idx-sf-def}]$ 

end

lemma  $\text{htai-prod-correct}$ :
  assumes  $[\text{simp}]$ :  $\text{hashedTa } H1 \quad \text{hashedTa } H2$ 
  shows
     $\text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha (\text{htai-prod } H1 H2)) = \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha H1) \cap \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha H2)$ 
     $\text{hashedTa } (\text{htai-prod } H1 H2)$ 
  apply ( $\text{unfold } \text{htai-prod-def}$ )
  apply ( $\text{auto simp add: hta-prod-correct hashedTa.hta-reindex-correct}$ )
  done

lemma  $\text{htai-prodWR-correct}$ :
  assumes  $[\text{simp}]$ :  $\text{hashedTa } H1 \quad \text{hashedTa } H2$ 
  shows
     $\text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha (\text{htai-prodWR } H1 H2))$ 
     $= \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha H1) \cap \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha H2)$ 
     $\text{hashedTa } (\text{htai-prodWR } H1 H2)$ 
  apply ( $\text{unfold } \text{htai-prodWR-def}$ )
  apply ( $\text{auto simp add: hta-prodWR-correct hashedTa.hta-reindex-correct}$ )
  done

lemma  $\text{htai-union-correct}$ :
  assumes  $[\text{simp}]$ :  $\text{hashedTa } H1 \quad \text{hashedTa } H2$ 
  shows
     $\text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha (\text{htai-union } H1 H2))$ 

```

```

= ta-lang (hta- $\alpha$  H1)  $\cup$  ta-lang (hta- $\alpha$  H2)
hashedTa (htai-union H1 H2)
apply (unfold htai-union-def)
apply (auto simp add: hta-union-correct hashedTa.hta-reindex-correct)
done

```

## 5.11 Interface Documentation

This section contains a documentation of the executable tree-automata interface. The documentation contains a description of each function along with the relevant correctness lemmas.

ML/OCaml users should note, that there is an interface that has the fixed type `Int` for both states and function symbols. This interface is simpler to use from ML/OCaml than the generic one, as it requires no overhead to emulate Isabelle/HOL type-classes.

The functions of this interface start with the prefix *htai* instead of *hta*, but have the same semantics otherwise (cf Section 5.10).

### 5.11.1 Building a Tree Automaton

**Function:** *hta-empty*

Returns a tree automaton with no states and no rules.

#### Relevant Lemmas

*hta-empty-correct:*  $hta-\alpha (hta-empty ()) = ta-empty$   
 $hashedTa (hta-empty ())$

*ta-empty-lang:*  $ta-lang ta-empty = \{\}$

**Function:** *hta-add-qi*

Adds an initial state to the given automaton.

#### Relevant Lemmas

*hashedTa.hta-add-qi-correct*  $hashedTa H \implies hta-\alpha (hta-add-qi qi H) = (ta-initial$   
 $= insert qi (ta-initial (hta-\alpha H)), ta-rules = ta-rules (hta-\alpha H))$   
 $hashedTa H \implies hashedTa (hta-add-qi qi H)$

**Function:** *hta-add-rule*

Adds a rule to the given automaton.

## Relevant Lemmas

*hashedTa.hta-add-rule-correct*:  $hashedTa\ H \implies hta-\alpha (hta-add-rule\ r\ H) =$   
 $(ta-initial = ta-initial (hta-\alpha\ H), ta-rules = insert\ r\ (ta-rules\ (hta-\alpha\ H)))$   
 $hashedTa\ H \implies hashedTa\ (hta-add-rule\ r\ H)$

### 5.11.2 Basic Operations

The tree automata of this library may have some optional indices, that accelerate computation. The tree-automata operations will compute the indices if necessary, but due to the pure nature of the Isabelle-language, the computed index cannot be stored for the next usage. Hence, before using a bulk of tree-automaton operations on the same tree-automata, the relevant indexes should be pre-computed.

**Function:** *hta-ensure-idx-f*

*hta-ensure-idx-s*

*hta-ensure-idx-sf*

Computes an index for a tree automaton, if it is not yet present.

**Function:** *hta-mem*, *hta-mem'*

Check whether a tree is accepted by the tree automaton.

## Relevant Lemmas

*hashedTa.hta-mem-correct*:  $hashedTa\ H \implies hta-mem\ t\ H = (t \in ta-lang (hta-\alpha\ H))$

*hashedTa.hta-mem'-correct*:  $\llbracket hashedTa\ H; hta-has-idx-f\ H \rrbracket \implies hta-mem'\ t\ H = (t \in ta-lang (hta-\alpha\ H))$

**Function:** *hta-prod*, *hta-prod'*

Compute the product automaton. The computed automaton is in forward-reduced form. The language of the product automaton is the intersection of the languages of the two argument automata.

## Relevant Lemmas

*hta-prod-correct-aux*:  $\llbracket hashedTa\ H1; hashedTa\ H2 \rrbracket \implies hta-\alpha (hta-prod\ H1\ H2) = ta-fwd-reduce (ta-prod (hta-\alpha\ H1) (hta-\alpha\ H2))$

$\llbracket hashedTa\ H1; hashedTa\ H2 \rrbracket \implies hashedTa (hta-prod\ H1\ H2)$

*hta-prod-correct*:  $\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-prod } H1 \ H2)) = \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H1) \cap \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H2)$

$\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-prod } H1 \ H2)$

*hta-prod'-correct-aux*:  $\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2; \text{ hta-has-idx-s } H1; \text{ hta-has-idx-sf } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-prod}' \ H1 \ H2) = \text{ta-fwd-reduce } (\text{ta-prod } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H1) (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H2))$

$\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2; \text{ hta-has-idx-s } H1; \text{ hta-has-idx-sf } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-prod}' \ H1 \ H2)$

*hta-prod'-correct*:  $\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2; \text{ hta-has-idx-s } H1; \text{ hta-has-idx-sf } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-prod}' \ H1 \ H2)) = \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H1) \cap \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H2)$

$\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2; \text{ hta-has-idx-s } H1; \text{ hta-has-idx-sf } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-prod}' \ H1 \ H2)$

**Function:** *hta-prodWR*

Compute the product automaton by brute-force algorithm. The resulting automaton is not reduced. The language of the product automaton is the intersection of the languages of the two argument automata.

### Relevant Lemmas

*hta-prodWR-correct-aux*:  $\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-prodWR } H1 \ H2) = \text{ta-prod } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H1) (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H2)$

$\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-prodWR } H1 \ H2)$

*hta-prodWR-correct*:  $\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-prodWR } H1 \ H2)) = \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H1) \cap \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H2)$

$\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-prodWR } H1 \ H2)$

**Function:** *hta-union*

Compute the union of two tree automata.

### Relevant Lemmas

*hta-union-correct'*:  $\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-union } H1 \ H2) = \text{ta-union-wrap } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H1) (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H2)$

$\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-union } H1 \ H2)$

*hta-union-correct*:  $\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-union } H1 \ H2)) = \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H1) \cup \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H2)$

$\llbracket \text{hashedTa } H1; \text{ hashedTa } H2 \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-union } H1 \ H2)$

**Function:** *hta-reduce*

Reduce the automaton to the given set of states. All initial states outside this set will be removed. Moreover, all rules that contain states outside this set are removed, too.

### Relevant Lemmas

$$\begin{aligned} \text{hashedTa.hta-reduce-correct: } \llbracket \text{hashedTa } H; \text{hs.invar } Q \rrbracket &\Longrightarrow \text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-reduce} \\ &H \ Q) = \text{ta-reduce } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H) (\text{hs.}\alpha \ Q) \\ \llbracket \text{hashedTa } H; \text{hs.invar } Q \rrbracket &\Longrightarrow \text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-reduce } H \ Q) \end{aligned}$$

**Function:** *hta-bwd-reduce*

Compute the backwards-reduced version of a tree automata. States from that no tree can be produced are removed. Backwards reduction does not change the language of the automaton.

### Relevant Lemmas

$$\begin{aligned} \text{hashedTa.hta-bwd-reduce-correct: } \text{hashedTa } H &\Longrightarrow \text{hta-}\alpha (\text{hta-bwd-reduce } H) \\ &= \text{ta-reduce } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H) (\text{b-accessible } (\text{ls.}\alpha \ (\text{hta-}\delta \ H))) \\ \text{hashedTa } H &\Longrightarrow \text{hashedTa } (\text{hta-bwd-reduce } H) \\ \text{ta-reduce-b-acc: } \text{ta-lang } (\text{ta-bwd-reduce } TA) &= \text{ta-lang } TA \end{aligned}$$

**Function:** *hta-is-empty-witness*

Check whether the language of the automaton is empty. If the language is not empty, a tree of the language is returned.

The following property is not (yet) formally proven, but should hold: If a tree is returned, the language contains no tree with a smaller depth than the returned one.

### Relevant Lemmas

$$\begin{aligned} \text{hashedTa.hta-is-empty-witness-correct: } \llbracket \text{hashedTa } H; \text{hta-is-empty-witness} \\ &H = \text{Some } t \rrbracket \Longrightarrow t \in \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H) \\ \llbracket \text{hashedTa } H; \text{hta-is-empty-witness } H = \text{None} \rrbracket &\Longrightarrow \text{ta-lang } (\text{hta-}\alpha \ H) \\ &= \{\} \end{aligned}$$

## 5.12 Code Generation

### export-code

*hta-mem hta-mem' hta-prod hta-prod' hta-prodWR hta-union*  
*hta-empty hta-add-qi hta-add-rule*  
*hta-reduce hta-bwd-reduce hta-is-empty-witness*  
*hta-ensure-idx-f hta-ensure-idx-s hta-ensure-idx-sf*

*htai-mem htai-prod htai-prodWR htai-union*  
*htai-empty htai-add-qi htai-add-rule*  
*htai-bwd-reduce htai-is-empty-witness*  
*htai-ensure-idx-f htai-ensure-idx-s htai-ensure-idx-sf*

**in** *SML*

**module-name** *Ta*

### export-code

*hta-mem hta-mem' hta-prod hta-prod' hta-prodWR hta-union*  
*hta-empty hta-add-qi hta-add-rule*  
*hta-reduce hta-bwd-reduce hta-is-empty-witness*  
*hta-ensure-idx-f hta-ensure-idx-s hta-ensure-idx-sf*

*htai-mem htai-prod htai-prodWR htai-union*  
*htai-empty htai-add-qi htai-add-rule*  
*htai-bwd-reduce htai-is-empty-witness*  
*htai-ensure-idx-f htai-ensure-idx-s htai-ensure-idx-sf*

**in** *Haskell*

**module-name** *Ta*

(*string-classes*)

### export-code

*hta-mem hta-mem' hta-prod hta-prod' hta-prodWR hta-union*  
*hta-empty hta-add-qi hta-add-rule*  
*hta-reduce hta-bwd-reduce hta-is-empty-witness*  
*hta-ensure-idx-f hta-ensure-idx-s hta-ensure-idx-sf*

*htai-mem htai-prod htai-prodWR htai-union*  
*htai-empty htai-add-qi htai-add-rule*  
*htai-bwd-reduce htai-is-empty-witness*  
*htai-ensure-idx-f htai-ensure-idx-s htai-ensure-idx-sf*

**in** *OCaml*

**module-name** *Ta*

```

ML <
  @{code hta-mem};
  @{code hta-mem}';
  @{code hta-prod};
  @{code hta-prod}';
  @{code hta-prodWR};
  @{code hta-union};
  @{code hta-empty};
  @{code hta-add-qi};
  @{code hta-add-rule};
  @{code hta-reduce};
  @{code hta-bwd-reduce};
  @{code hta-is-empty-witness};
  @{code hta-ensure-idx-f};
  @{code hta-ensure-idx-s};
  @{code hta-ensure-idx-sf};
  @{code htai-mem};
  @{code htai-prod};
  @{code htai-prodWR};
  @{code htai-union};
  @{code htai-empty};
  @{code htai-add-qi};
  @{code htai-add-rule};
  @{code htai-bwd-reduce};
  @{code htai-is-empty-witness};
  @{code htai-ensure-idx-f};
  @{code htai-ensure-idx-s};
  @{code htai-ensure-idx-sf};
  (*@{code ls-size};
  @{code hs-size};
  @{code rs-size}*)
>

end

```

## 6 Conclusion

This development formalized basic tree automata algorithms and the class of tree-regular languages. Efficient code was generated for all the languages supported by the Isabelle2009 code generator, namely Standard-ML, OCaml, and Haskell.

### 6.1 Efficiency of Generated Code

The efficiency of the generated code, especially for Haskell, is quite good. On the author's dual-core machine with 2.6GHz and 4GiB memory, the



generated code handles automata with several thousands rules and states in a few seconds. The Haskell-code is between 2 and 3 times slower than a Java-implementation of (approximately) the same algorithms.

A comparison to the Taml-library of the Timbuk-project [3] is not fair, because it runs in interpreted OCaml-Mode by default, and this is not comparable in speed to, e.g., compiled Haskell. However, the generated OCaml-code of our library can also be run in interpreted mode, to get a fair comparison with Taml:

The speed was compared for computing whether the intersection of two tree-automata is empty or not. The choice of this test was motivated by the author's requirements.

While our library also computes a witness for non-emptiness, the Taml-library has no such function. For some examples of non-empty languages, our library was about 14 times faster than Taml. This is mainly because our emptiness-test stops if the first initial state is found to be accessible, while the Timbuk-implementation always performs a complete reduction. However, even when compared for automata that have an empty language, i.e. where Timbuk and our library have to do the same work, our library was about 2 times faster.

There are some performance test cases with large, randomly created, automata in the directory *code*, that can be run by the script *doTests.sh*. These test cases read pairs of automata, intersect them and check the result for emptiness. If the intersection is not empty, a tree accepted by both automata is computed.

There are significant differences in efficiency between the used languages. Most notably, the Haskell code runs one order of magnitude faster than the SML and OCaml code. Also, using the more elaborated top-down intersection algorithm instead of the brute-force algorithm brings the least performance gain in Haskell. The author suspects that the Haskell compiler does some optimization, perhaps by lazy-evaluation, that is missed by the ML systems.

## 6.2 Future Work

There are many starting points for improvement, some of which are mentioned below.

**Implemented Algorithms** In this development, only basic algorithms for non-deterministic tree-automata have been formalized. There are many more interesting algorithms and notions that may be formalized, amongst others tree transducers and minimization of (deterministic) tree automata.

Actually, the goal when starting this development was to implement,

at least, intersection and emptiness check with witness computation. These algorithms are needed for a DPN[1] model checking algorithm[5] that the author is currently working on.

**Refinement** The algorithms are first formalized on an abstract level, and then manually refined to become executable. In theory, the abstract algorithms are already executable, as they involve only recursive functions and finite sets. We have experimented with simplifier setups to execute the algorithms in the simplifier, however the performance was quite bad and there were some problems with termination due to the innermost rewriting-strategy used by the simplifier, that required careful crafting of the simplifier setup.

The refinement is done in a somewhat systematic way, using the tools provided by the Isabelle Collections Framework (e.g. a data refinement framework for the while-combinator). However, most of the refinement work is done by hand, and the author believes that it should be possible to do the refinement with more tool support.

Another direction of future work would be to use the tree-automata framework developed here for applications. The author is currently working on a model-checker for DPNs that uses tree-automata based techniques [5], and plans to use this tree automata framework to generate a verified implementation of this model-checker. However, there are other interesting applications of tree automata, that could be formalized in Isabelle and, using this framework, be refined to efficient executable algorithms.

### 6.3 Trusted Code Base

In this section we shortly characterize on what our formal proof depends, i.e. how to interpret the information contained in this formal proof and the fact that it is accepted by the Isabelle/HOL system.

First of all, you have to trust the theorem prover and its axiomatization of HOL, the ML-platform, the operating system software and the hardware it runs on. All these components are, in theory, able to cause false theorems to be proven. However, the probability of a false theorem to get proven due to a hardware error or an error in the operating system software is reasonably low. There are errors in hardware and operating systems, but they will usually cause the system to crash or exhibit other unexpected behaviour, instead of causing Isabelle to quietly accept a false theorem and behave normal otherwise. The theorem prover itself is a bit more critical in this aspect. However, Isabelle/HOL is implemented in LCF-style, i.e. all the proofs are eventually checked by a small kernel of trusted code, containing rather simple operations. HOL is the logic that is most frequently used with

Isabelle, and it is unlikely that its axiomatization in Isabelle is inconsistent and no one found and reported this inconsistency already.

The next crucial point is the code generator of Isabelle. We derive executable code from our specifications. The code generator contains another (thin) layer of untrusted code. This layer has some known deficiencies<sup>2</sup> (as of Isabelle2009) in the sense that invalid code is generated. This code is then rejected by the target language's compiler or interpreter, but does not silently compute the wrong thing.

Moreover, assuming correctness of the code generator, the generated code is only guaranteed to be *partially* correct<sup>3</sup>, i.e. there are no formal termination guarantees.

**Acknowledgements** We thank Markus Müller-Olm for some interesting discussions. Moreover, we thank the people on the Isabelle mailing list for quickly giving useful answers to any Isabelle-related questions.

---

<sup>2</sup>For example, the Haskell code generator may generate variables starting with uppercase letters, while the Haskell-specification requires variables to start with lowercase letters. Moreover, the ML code generator does not know the ML value restriction, and may generate code that violates this restriction.

<sup>3</sup>A simple example is the always-diverging function  $f_{\text{div}} :: \text{bool} = \text{while } (\lambda x. \text{True}) \text{ id True}$  that is definable in HOL. The lemma  $\forall x. x = \text{if } f_{\text{div}} \text{ then } x \text{ else } x$  is provable in Isabelle and rewriting based on it could, theoretically, be inserted before the code generation process, resulting in code that always diverges

## References

- [1] A. Bouajjani, M. Müller-Olm, and T. Touili. Regular symbolic analysis of dynamic networks of pushdown systems. In *Proc. of CONCUR'05*, volume 3653 of *LNCS*. Springer, 2005.
- [2] H. Comon, M. Dauchet, R. Gilleron, C. Löding, F. Jacquemard, D. Lugiez, S. Tison, and M. Tommasi. Tree automata techniques and applications. Available on: <http://www.grappa.univ-lille3.fr/tata>, 2007. release October, 12th 2007.
- [3] T. Genet and V. V. T. Tong. Timbuk 2.2. Available on: <http://www.grappa.univ-lille3.fr/tata>.
- [4] P. Lammich. Isabelle collection library. In G. Klein, T. Nipkow, and L. Paulson, editors, *Archive of Formal Proofs*. <http://isa-afp.org/entries/collections.shtml>, 2009. Formal proof development.
- [5] P. Lammich. Tree automata for analyzing dynamic pushdown networks. In J. Knoop and A. Prantl, editors, *15. Kolloquium Programmiersprachen und Grundlagen der Programmierung*, number Bericht 2009-X-1. Technische Universität Wien, 2009.